

МИНИСТЕРСТВО ЗДРАВООХРАНЕНИЯ РЕСПУБЛИКИ БЕЛАРУСЬ
БЕЛОРУССКИЙ ГОСУДАРСТВЕННЫЙ МЕДИЦИНСКИЙ УНИВЕРСИТЕТ
КАФЕДРА ЛАТИНСКОГО ЯЗЫКА

А. З. ЦИСЫК, Е. Л. КУЗНЕЦОВА

ЛАТИНСКИЙ ЯЗЫК

THE LATIN LANGUAGE

Рекомендовано Учебно-методическим объединением
по высшему медицинскому, фармацевтическому образованию
в качестве учебно-методического пособия для студентов учреждений
высшего образования, обучающихся по специальности
1-79 01 07 «Стоматология»



Минск БГМУ 2023

УДК 811.124(811.111)(075.8)
ББК 81.2.(Лат.)(81.2 Англ. — 923)
Ц73

Рецензенты: канд. филол. наук, доц., зав. каф. иностранных языков Гродненского государственного медицинского университета Я. В. Разводовская; каф. иностранных языков Гомельского государственного медицинского университета

Цисык, А. З.

Ц73 Латинский язык = The Latin Language : учебно-методическое пособие / А. З. Цисык, Е. Л. Кузнецова. – Минск : БГМУ, 2023. – 151 с.

ISBN 978-985-21-1441-7.

Состоит из фонетического раздела и трех основных разделов учебного материала: анатомического, фармацевтического и клинического. Каждый раздел содержит теоретическую и практическую части, латинско-английский и английско-латинский словари.

Предназначено для студентов медицинского факультета иностранных учащихся, обучающихся по специальности «Стоматология» на английском языке.

УДК 811.124(811.111) (075.8)
ББК 81.2.(Лат.)(81.2 Англ. — 923)

ISBN 978-985-21-1441-7

© Цисык А. З., Кузнецова Е. Л., 2023
© УО «Белорусский государственный
медицинский университет», 2023

PREFACE

This manual is meant for English-speaking students studying at the Faculties of Dentistry at medical universities of the Republic of Belarus. Its structure corresponds to the syllabus presented in the State Educational Standard Plan for the subject «The Latin Language» taught in the medical universities at the Faculties of Dentistry. The manual has been composed in accordance with generally accepted patterns expressed in well-known manuals and textbooks of Latin and Fundamentals of Medical Terminology.

The manual is divided into four parts — phonetics, the anatomical part with the main grammar rules, the pharmaceutical part and the clinical one.

Every lesson, as it is generally known, has a uniform structure: checking the home task (orally and in writing), some explanation of new topic, students' work with exercises. The manual contains all necessary components for this work — grammar and terminological material, as well as exercises. In the latter, words are given in alphabetical order, and every lesson is provided with Latin-English and English-Latin glossaries. Such a distribution of educational material should help students in their work with exercises.

According to high school norms of studying linguistic subjects, students are to learn 30–40 new words at every lesson, although this word memorizing can be managed naturally only due to strenuous efforts to do the homework. But then, this work is constantly facilitated by lexical affinity of equivalent words in Latin and English.

The main attention is paid to the anatomical and clinical terms, as namely these terms are and will be mainly needed in daily medical practice of foreign students. That's why the pharmaceutical part of the manual is presented quite concisely. As to clinical terms, on the basis of well-known English medical dictionaries we sought to give the scientific definition of each terminological unit. Such an introduction into professional terminology judging by the students' reaction has always been of great interest to them.

The subject «Medical Latin» is mastered and controlled chiefly in written form. So both proper spelling and grammar arrangement are of great value as spoken Latin is very simple. That's why control tests at every lesson as well as summing up are performed only in written form.

The students should bear in mind, that only systematic work on the topic and vocabulary of every lesson on their own can result in success.

INTRODUCTION INTO THE SUBJECT

The subject you are going to study is the Latin Language. To some point, this name is relative, because nowadays there are no people speaking Latin. From the school course of world history you can remember, that many centuries ago, where nowadays Italy is, there was the Roman Empire. The Roman state which included many lands and people existed till 476 A.D. And initially, Rome was a small town, founded by an Italian tribe in 753 B.C. and Latin was its native language. Gradually, century after century, Rome became the most powerful state of the Mediterranean and Latin was widespread and acknowledged.

An event of tremendous historical importance for both Rome and the future of European culture was the Roman conquest of Greece, the motherland of European culture and science. The Greek physician Hippocrates is namely considered to be the founder of European scientific medicine. Hippocrates and other Greek physicians made a great contribution into the development of medicine, that's why Greek medicine was extremely popular and prestigious among the population of the Mediterranean area. For this reason, Greek medical terms were borrowed into Latin and came into use in different countries. So originally the European medical terminology was formed on the basis of Greek and Latin words.

In the new history of Europe, beginning with the Roman state's collapse, the Latin language was used for 1000 years as the language of state establishments, Catholic religion, education and science, especially at universities founded in the 12-th century. Every university would have a medical faculty. Diplomas and theses as well as the process of education itself were in Latin. As to medicine, Latin became the international professional language of physicians. Medical terms rooting from Latin and Greek are presented in any European language as borrowings. What's more, there exist lists of biological and medical terms, forming the so-called Nomenclatures, approved at the International Congresses of scientists — anatomical, histological, microbiological etc. Latin terms of those nomenclatures are used in education and scientific literature. That's why future doctors must study fundamentals of international medical terminology, based on Latin grammar and Latin and Greek word building elements (roots, stems and affixes).

Among modern European languages English, and, particularly, medical English, contains a great number of Latin and Latinized Greek words. It becomes evident when comparing medical glossaries of Latin and English. To prove this compare some medical terms in Latin and English.

Latin anatomical terms	English equivalents	Latin pharmaceutical terms	English equivalents
abdomen	abdomen	Acidum aceticum	acetic acid
canalis	canal	aether	ether
cardiacus	cardiac	cortex	cortex
cavitas	cavity	dilutus	diluted
lobus	lobe	Oleum Eucalypti	eucalyptus oil
longus	long	herba	herb
nasalis	nasal	pilula	pill
tonsilla	tonsil	tinctura	tincture

Latin clinical terms	English equivalents	Meaning
allergicus	allergic	caused by or affected with allergy
aneurysma	aneurism	a localized dilatation of the walls of a blood vessel, usually an artery
cancerophobia	cancerophobia	fear of cancer
cholecystogramma	cholecystogram	result of gall bladder X-ray examination
gnathoschisis	gnathoschisis	a congenital fissure in the maxilla
granuloma	granuloma	a tumor composed of granulation tissue
odontalgia	odontalgia	a painful condition affecting a tooth, tooth-ache
stomatomycosis	stomatomycosis	any morbid condition of the mouth which is caused by a morbid fungus

As we see, in clinical terminology using Latin terms is particularly preferable, because one Latin word can change the whole group of English words, expressing some pathological phenomenon.

The proximity of medical terms in Latin and English can be explained very simply: it is well known, that English medical terminology developed from Medieval Latin terminology, which had absorbed ancient Latin and Greek medical lexical units. Both Latin and ancient Greek is an inexhaustible source for a new term building, and this process keep on going. Everybody striving to become a doctor among them stomatologist has to master Latin and fundamentals of international medical terminology.

The course of Latin at the Medical University you are going to study consists of 3 main parts, which correspond to the main groups of medical terminology: anatomical (and partly histological), pharmaceutical and clinical ones. This material is learned in the course of a academic term (semester); each lesson is once a week. Each new lesson includes your teacher's explanation of the topic of the lesson, but the main bulk of work for you is your home task. A specific feature of studying is written control of checking home task preparation at every lesson. Besides this regular test control, 3 written tests (for 90 min) are provided. The purpose of these tests is to control the knowledge of the entire material of each part of the course. There exist uniform (for all groups and teachers) rules of the control assessment and you will be acquainted with them. So, at every lesson, you will first work orally, checking the home task with your teacher, and then your knowledge will be controlled in written form (while books and notebooks are closed). The principal way to this knowledge is your own persistent work with your textbook memorizing Latin words and rules of its grammar. And, without doubt, every student can succeed in learning Latin and fundamentals of medical terminology, if his or her efforts are steady and diligent.

PART I. PHONETIC RULES OF PRONUNCIATION

LESSON 1

ALPHABET IN LATIN. THE PRONUNCIATION OF VOWELS, CONSONANTS AND LETTER COMBINATIONS. ACCENT RULES

§ 1. Latin alphabet

The Latin alphabet includes 25 letters.

Letters	Names	Latin pronunciation	Latin examples and their transcription	English equivalents
A a	a [ʌ]	[a]	vas [vʌs]	vessel
B b	be [be]	[b]	bulbus [bú:lbus]	bulb
C c	tse [tse]	[ts] [k]	coccyx [kó:ktsiks]	coccyx, coccygeal bones
D d	de [de]	[d]	dens [dens]	tooth
E e	e [e]	[e]	vertebra [vé:rtebrʌ]	vertebra
F f	ef [ef]	[f]	frontalis [frontá:lis]	frontal
G g	ge [ge]	[g]	genu [gé:nu]	knee
H h	ha [hʌ]	[h] like English heart, here	hepar [hé:pʌr]	liver
I i	i [i]	[i]	incisura [incizú:rʌ]	incisure
J j	yot [yot]	[j] like English yes, you	jugularis [jugulá:ris]	jugular
K k	ka [kʌ]	[k]	skeleton [ské:leton]	skeleton
L l	el [el]	[l] as in English life, love	cellula [tsé:llulʌ]	cell
M m	em [em]	[m]	mors [mors]	death
N n	en [en]	[n]	nodus [nó:dus]	node
O o	o [o]	[o]	coronarius [koroná:rius]	coronary
P p	pe [pe]	[p]	palpebra [pá:lpebrʌ]	eyelid
Q q	ku [ku]	[kv] together with vowel u and vowel a , e , i , o , u after u	Quercus [kvé:rkus] quartus [kvá:rtus]	oak fourth
R r	er [er]	[r]	renalis [rená:lis]	renal
S s	es [es]	[s] [z]	sinus [sí:nus] incisura [intsizú:rʌ]	sinus, hollow incisure
T t	te [te]	[t] [ts]	tibia [tí:biʌ] articulatio [ʌrtikulá:tsio]	tibia, shine-bone articulation, joint
U u	u [u]	[u]	succus [sú:kkus]	juice
V v	ve [ve]	[v]	valva [vá:lvʌ]	valve
X x	iks [iks]	[ks]	dexter [dé:kster]	right, right-hand
Y y	ipsilon [ípsilon]	[i]	gyrus [gí:rus]	gyrus, convolution
Z z	zeta [zétʌ]	[z]	zygomaticus [zigomá:tikus]	zygomatic

The last two letters, borrowed by Romans from Greek alphabet, are used, as a rule, in the words of Greek origin.

§ 2. Division of Latin sounds

Six letters of the alphabet (a, e, i, o, u, y) correspond to vowels and nineteen (b, c, d, f, g, h, j, k, l, m, n, p, q, r, s, t, v, x, z) denote consonants.

§ 3. Pronunciation of vowels

Vowels in Latin, except «y», sound practically the same, as the sounds of their names in the alphabet (see above). So, the letter «a» sounds [a], the letter «e» — sounds [e] and so on. One may add that the stressed vowel corresponds in pronunciation to a long one in English, compare:

cavitas [cá:vitʌs] — cavity

apertura [ʌpertú:rʌ] — aperture, opening

venosus [venó:zus] — venous

tonsilla [tonsí:llʌ] — tonsil.

The letter «y» (ípsilon) sounds as the Latin letter «i» (that's why the Frenchman call y «igrek», i. e. the Greek «i»):

tympanum [tí:mpʌnum] — drum.

All the above given examples also indicate, that Latin vowels don't practically change their sound quality in different syllables. But the vowel «i» placed before the vowels «a», «e», «o», «u» when making a common syllable with them, changes its sound characteristics: now it sounds similar to the English vowel «y» in the yard, yours, yourself, youthful, let's compare:

maialis [mʌjá:lis] — referring to May

ieiunum [jejú:num] — jejunum

maior [má:jor] — greater.

As in such cases the letter «i» sounds different compared to the vowel «i» in ordinary cases, the scientists in the XVI century decided to introduce a new letter «j» into the Latin alphabet, so as to substitute the vowel «i»: majalis, jejunum, major and so on. It is common to use the letter «j» in medical and biological terms. Let's, however, note that in the terms of the Greek origin the vowel «i» never makes a syllable with the subsequent vowels «a», «e», «o», «u» and therefore the letter «j» cannot be used:

iater [iá:ter] physician, commonly geriater, paediatier, psychiater, phthisiater and so on — these terms will be discussed in the clinical part of our course. We can also mention the noun Iodum [ió:dum] — iodine (Latin names of chemical elements are to be written with capital letters).

§ 4. Pronunciation of two vowel combinations

Two vowels following each other can form the so-called diphthong that is pronounced as a combination of two vowels pronounced in one syllable.

So **au** [au] is pronounced as in the English words down, sound, south, compound and so on:

auris [áuris] — ear, caudalis [kaudá:lis] — caudal, trauma [tráuma] — injury, wound.

Eu [eu] has no analogue in English, so its pronunciation must be learnt by the spelling memorizing. So, we have to pronounce this vowel combination as one syllable when stressing a little its first part [éu], for example:

pneumonia [pneumoníΛ] — pneumonia

Eucalyptus [eukalíptus] — eucalyptus.

However, you should pay attention to the letter combination «**eu**» at the end of words, where it doesn't make a diphthong and each vowel is pronounced separately:

sigmoideus [sigmoí:deus] — sigmoid

corpus luteum [kó:rpus lú:teum] — corpus luteum (yellow body).

Two vowels can also form a digraph, which sounds like the Latin vowel «**e**»:

ae — [e] — costae [kó:ste] — ribs

oe — [e] — oedema [edé:mΛ] — swelling.

If each vowel in such digraphs is to be pronounced separately, two dots are placed over the letter «**e**»:

aër [á:er] — air, Aloë (names of medicinal plants are to be written in Latin with the capital letter) [á:loe] — aloe.

§ 5. Pronunciation of consonants

Consonants **b, d, f, h, k, m, n, p, q, s, t, v, x** are similar in pronouncing to English. The difference is that consonants **p, t, k** are not aspirated, as in English. Pronunciation of the rest consonants is to be explained.

The letter **Cc** before the vowels «**e**», «**i**», «**y**» and digraphs «**ae**», «**oe**» is pronounced as [ts], but before the vowels «**a**», «**o**», «**u**» and consonants (except **h**) is pronounced as [k]:

cervicalis [tserviká:lis] — cervical

caecum [tsé:kum] — caecum

coccyx [kó:ktsiks] — coccyx, coccygeal bones.

The letter **Gg** is always pronounced like [g] in English **get, glass, disguise**:

gaster [gá:ster] — stomach

genu [gé:nu] — knee

vagina [vΛgí:nΛ] — vagina.

The letter **Hh** is pronounced approximately as the letter «**h**» in English:

homo [hó:mo] — man

hyoideus [hioí:deus] — sublingual.

The letter **Ll** is pronounced in someway softer than in English and is palatalized both before vowels and consonants (as in the pronunciation of such English words as **look** and **live**):

albus [á:lbus] — white

cellula [tsé:llulΛ] — cell

palatinus [pΛlΛtínus] — palatine

pyloricus [piló:rikus] — pyloric.

The letter **Rr** in Latin is pronounced always clearly and distinctly not as the English **Rr** [a]:

dexter [dé:xter] — right
posterior [posté:rior] — back
renalis [rená:lis] — renal.

The letter **Ss** between two vowels is pronounced like [z], in other cases — as [s]:

basis [bá:zis] — base
sinus [sí:nus] — sinus, hollow.

The letter **Tt** is commonly pronounced as [t] without aspiration: tinctura [tinktú:r^] — tincture. But in such a letter combination, where «i» follows «t» plus some other vowel, «t» is pronounced as [ts]:

articulatio [artikulá:tsio] — joint
protuberantia [protuberá:ntsia] — protuberance.

There is, however, an exception from this last rule: if before the combination **ti** + **vowel** the consonants «s» or «x» are placed, then the pronunciation of **ti** is [ti]:

digestio [digé:stio] — digestion
ostium [ó:stium] — opening, orifice.

The letter **Zz** is pronounced as [z]:

zona [zó:n^] — zone
horizontalis [horizontá:lis] — horizontal.

But in two cases we pronounce this letter as [ts]: influenza [influé:nts^] — grippus, influenza and Zincum [tsí:nkum] — zink.

§ 6. Pronunciation of consonant combinations

Two consonants can form a digraph, which is pronounced as a consonant:

ch is pronounced as [kh]:

charta [khá:rt^] — paper chorda [khó:rd^] — cord

ph is pronounced as [f]:

lymphaticus [limfá:ticus] — lymphatic pharynx [fá:rinks] — pharynx

rh is pronounced as [r]:

rhinorrhagia [rinoragí:a] — rhinorrhagia; nasal bleeding

rhomboideus [romboí:deus] — rhomboid

th is pronounced as [t]:

thorax [tó:raks] — thorax, chest labyrinthus [l^birí:ntus] — labyrinth.

The combination of three consonants **sch** is pronounced as [skh]:

schema [skhé:m^] — scheme

ischiadicus [iskhiá:dikus] — sciatic.

§ 7. Pronunciation of some letter combinations

The letter combination **ngu** is pronounced as [ngv], if the vowel «u» is followed by one of the vowels «a», «e», «i», «u»:

lingua [li:ngvΛ] — tongue, language

unguentum [ungvé:ntum] — ointment

unguis [ú:ngvis] — nail.

But if a consonant follows «u», then **ngu** is pronounced as [ngu]:

angulus [á:ngulus] — angle

lingula [lí:ngulΛ] — lingula, little tongue.

The letter combination **qu** with a following vowel (**a, e, i, o, u**) is pronounced as [kv] with a subsequent vowel:

squamosus [skvamó:zus] — squamosal

aqueductus [akvedú:ktus] — aqueduct

Quercus [kvé:rkus] — oak.

§ 8. Stressing rules in the words consisting of two syllables

If a word consists of two syllables, there is always only one stress: the first syllable is stressed:

cós-ta, lá-rynx, nér-vus.

§ 9. Stressing rules in the polysyllabic words.

Length and brevity of the second end syllable

In polysyllabic words consisting of three and more syllables, the second or third syllables from the end of the word can be stressed. The stress depends on the length or brevity of the second word end syllable: if it is long, it is stressed, if it is short, it cannot be stressed and then the third word end syllable is stressed.

The length and brevity of the second end syllable particularly in textbooks are usually marked by special signs: a short line is placed over the vowel if it is long, and a little arch — if it is short, compare:

ā — ä, ē — ě, ī — ĭ, ō — ǒ, ū — ů, ŷ — ỵ̂.

So, if we find such words as forāmen, incisūra, hepātītis etc. in the dictionary, we can instantly determine that such words have an accent on the second syllable from the end.

If in the dictionary we see such words as lamīna, encephālon, thoracīcus etc., we understand that the third syllable from the end must be stressed: lámīna, encéphālon, thorácīcus.

Now, we should ask a crucial question: do we have to consult the dictionary about the quality of the second end syllable in every case or not? Fortunately, there exist some rules helping us to determine at once the length or brevity of the second end syllable, or more simply, of the second end vowel. First of all, the suffixes containing vowels which are long or short by nature, calling the suffixes accordingly «long» or «short», can give us guidance about the length or brevity of the second end vowel.

§ 10. Long suffixes

Before listing the suffixes, one must notice, that part of these suffixes is always long or short in all kinds of terminology — anatomical, pharmaceutical, clinical. As we are going to begin with anatomical terminology and continue studying it during the first semester, it would be proper to begin with the suffixes in anatomical terms.

Suffixes	Examples	English equivalents	Exceptions and their translation
-āl-	dentālis horizontālis	dental horizontal	encephālon (brain)
-ār-	articulāris mandibulāris	articular mandibular	
-āt-	caudātus meātus	caudate passage	
-īn-	palatīnus vagīna	palatine vagina, sheath	lamīna (lamine), femīna (women), retīna (retina), dens serotīnus (wisdom tooth), nervus trigemīnus (trigeminal nerve), termīnus (term)
-īv-	gingīva dens incisīvus	gingiva, gum incisor (tooth)	
-ōs-	aponeurōsis petrōsus	aponeurosis petrosal	
-ūr-	incisūra sutūra	incisure, slit or notch suture, line of junction	

§ 11. Short suffixes

Suffixes	Examples	English equivalents	Exceptions and their translation
-iāc-	cardiācus coeliācus	cardiac coeliac	
-īc-	gastrīcus tunīca	gastric tunic, coat	vesīca (bladder)
-ōl-	alveōlus foveōla	alveolus, (tooth) socket foveola	
-ūl-	clavicūla mandibūla	clavicle mandible	

§ 12. Suffixes with similar quality of vowel in all parts of medical terminology

As mentioned above, some suffixes can always be long or short in all parts of medical terminology, compare:

Suffixes	Anatomical terms	Pharmaceutical terms	Clinical terms
-āt-	muscūlus levātor (levator (muscle))	Aqua destillāta (distilled water)	caries exacerbāta (exacerbated caries)
-ōs-	aponeurōsis (aponeurosis)	spirituōsus (spirituous)	erythrocytōsis (erythrocytosis, increased amount of red blood cells in the blood)
-ūr-	junctūra (juncture, junction)	tinctūra (tincture)	fractūra (fracture)
-ūl-	angūlus (angle)	Betūla (birch)	furuncūlus (furuncle, boil)

§ 13. The way of accent determination when the second end vowel isn't a part of a long or a short suffix

In many words the second vowel from the word end is placed before a consonant, but this vowel is not a part of a common long or short suffix. In such cases we can determine its length or brevity controlling those peculiarities of the given word in the textbook vocabulary, compare:

forāmen (opening), orbīta (eye-socket), skelēton (skeleton), suprēmus (highest), tuberositas (tuberosity), urēter (ureter) and so on.

§ 14. Some rules of syllable length determining

In some cases we can determine the syllable length or brevity with the help of certain rules.

1. The syllable is long, when its vowel is placed before two or more consonants:

ligamentum (ligament), maxilla (maxilla, upper jaw), sinister (left).

But, when the vowel is short by nature (it is shown in the dictionary) and it is placed before two consonants, first of which being **b, c, d, g, p, t** and the second is **l** or **r**, this short vowel is pronounced short:

vertēbra (vertebra), cerēbrum (cerebrum), os triquētrum (triquetrum bone), multīplex (multiple).

And when this vowel is long by nature, our rule is valid:

cicātrix (cicatrix, scar), psychiātri (psychiatrists), salūbris (curative).

2. The syllable is long, when it includes the diphthongs **au, eu** or digraphs **ae, oe**:

amōēba (ameba), diāēta (diet), Althāēa (althea).

3. The syllable is long, when its vowel is placed before the consonants **x** or **z**:
reflēxus (reflex), Orȳza (rice).

§ 15. The rules of syllable brevity determining

1. The syllable is short, when its vowel is placed before another vowel:

linēa (line), superīor (higher, upper), cornūa (horns), Aluminīum (aluminium).

There are, however, two points of exceptions from this rule:

1) in some words of Greek origin the last but one vowel was formed from the digraph **ae**, that's why it keeps the length of the syllable:

coccygaeus → coccygēus, peritoneaeum → peritonēum.

You have to memorize these exceptions:

perinēum (perineum, fork), peritonēum (peritoneum), trachēa (trachea), anconēus (anconeus (muscle)), coccygēus (coccygeal), esophagēus (esophageal), glutēus (gluteal), laryngēus (laryngeal), meningēus (meningeal), peronēus (peroneal, fibular), pharyngēus (pharyngeal).

2) in clinical terms with the ending **-ia** their vowel **i** and syllable with it are stressed:

dyskinesía (dyskinesia, disturbance of movement), otoscopía (otoscopy, internal examination of the ear).

Some peculiarities of this exception will be discussed in the clinical part of our course.

2. The syllable is short, when its vowel is placed before digraphs **ch, ph, rh, th**: ductus choledōchus (bile duct), odontolīthus (odontolith, calculus of the teeth).

§ 16. Exercises

1. Read the following words paying special attention to the vowel pronunciation:

forámen (opening), ligaméntum (ligament), dúctus (duct), interglobuláris (interglobular), longitudinális (longitudinal), massetéricus (masticatory, chewing), pylóricus (pyloric), synoviális (synovial), tympánicus (tympanic), sínister (left), zygomáticus (zygomatic).

2. Read the following words paying special attention to the pronunciation of the letter c:

cáput (head), cervicális (cervical), cérebrum (brain), cútis (skin), Ácidum acéticum (acetic acid), síccus (dry), fácies (face, surface), coccygéus (coccygeal), coerúleus (blue), caécum (caecum), búccae (cheeks), carcinóma (cancer), sáccus lacrimális (lacrimal sac).

3. Read the following words paying special attention to the pronunciation of the letters g and q:

nervus hypoglóssus (hypoglossal nerve), gánglion pterygopalatínium (pterygopalatine ganglion), rámi gingiváles (gingival branches), gánglion geniculátum (geniculate ganglion), gýrus anguláris (angular gyrus), húmor aquósus (aqueous humor), aquedúctus vestibuli (vestibular aqueduct), cósta quinta (fifth rib), márgo squamósus (squamosal border).

4. Read correctly the following words, paying special attention to the consonants j, s and t:

ála májor (major wing), flexúra duodenojejunalis (duodenojejunal flexure), júga alveolária (alveolar yokes), articulátio compósita (complex joint), óstium atrioventriculáre dextrum (right atrioventricular orifice), incisúra juguláris (jugular notch), segméntum basále antérius (anterior basal segment), básis óssis sácri (base of sacrum), míxtio pro potióne (mixture for drinking).

5. Read correctly the following words paying attention to combinations of vowels:

cóstae spúriae (false ribs), forámen caécum línguae (caecum foramen of tongue), Óleum Eucalýpti (eucalyptus oil), oedéma larýngis (edema of larynx), nervus auriculáris (auricular nerve), aponeurósis línguae (lingual aponeurosis), célulae haematopoéticae (haematogenic cells), glándulae oesophagéae (oesophageal glands), pneumonía mígrans (migratory pneumonia).

6. Read attentively the following words with vowel and consonant combinations:

nervus ischiadicus (sciatic nerve), Strophanthinum (strophanthin), Synthomycinum (synthomycin), febris haemorrhagica (haemorrhagic fever), raphe pharyngis (pharyngeal raphe), asthma bronchiale (bronchial asthma), vertebrae thoracicae (thoracic vertebrae), unguentum ophthalmicum (ophthalmic ointment), labyrinthus ethmoidalis (ethmoidal labyrinth), Methylenum coeruleum (blue methylene), rhizoma Glycyrrhizae (rhizome of licorice), Schizandra chinensis (chinense magnolia vine), sectiones hypothalami (sections of hypothalamus), ductus choleochochus (common bile duct), truncus brachiocephalicus (brachiocephalic trunk), distantia trochanterica (trochanteric distance), hemisphaerium cerebelli (hemisphere of cerebellum), tuberculum pharyngeum (pharyngeal tubercle), vena saphena (saphenous vein), cirrhosis hepatis (biliary cirrhosis), typhus abdominalis (abdominal typhus), nephrolithiasis chronica (chronic nephrolithiasis), foetor ex ore seu halitosis (fetid or offensive breath or halitosis).

7. Determine the stress syllable, paying attention to the long and short suffixes:

incisura ethmoidalis (ethmoidal notch), tuberculum jugulare (jugular tubercle), lingua sphenoidalis (sphenoidal lingula), semicanalis tubae auditivae (canal for auditory tube), meatus acusticus externus (external acoustic meatus), lamina perpendicularis (perpendicular plate), facies palatina (palatine surface), vesica biliaris (gallbladder), glandulae endocrinae (endocrine glands), juncturae cinguli pelvici (joints of pelvic girdle), urethra masculina (male urethra), spina scapulae (spine of scapula), intestinum tenue (small intestine), alveolus dentalis (tooth socket), tunica mucosa linguae (mucous membrane of tongue), arcus dentalis mandibularis (mandibular dental arcade), trigonum submandibulare (submandibular triangle).

8. Determine the stress syllable, paying attention to the natural length or brevity of the last but one vowel:

tuberculum anterius (anterior tubercle), incisurae costales (costal slits), vertebra thoracica (thoracic vertebra), ductus choledochus (bile duct), foramen apicis radices dentis (apical foramen of the root of the tooth), vesica urinaria (urinary bladder), Oleum Ricini (castor oil), Sirupus Rubi idaei (raspberry syrup), Solutio Iodi spirituosa (iodine spirituous solution), eczema allergicum (allergic eczema), stomatitis chronica (chronic stomatitis), systema conducens cordis (conducting system of heart), apertura thoracis inferior (lower opening of chest), musculus levator fornicis (muscle raising fornix), Tinctura Valeriana (tincture of valerian), facies anterior partis petrosae (anterior surface of petrous part), canales palatini minores (lesser palatine canals), systema lymphoideum (lymphoid system).

9. Write down the terms, put the signs of length or brevity over the last but one syllable (using vocabularies if necessary) and determine in writing the accent:

ligamentum popliteum obliquum (oblique popliteal ligament), cartilāgo thyreoidea (thyroid cartilage), bifurcatio tracheae (bifurcation of trachea), musculus anconeus (anconeus muscle), atrium meatus medii (atrium of middle meatus), Extractum Crataegi fluīdum (liquid extract of hawthorn), paralýsis congenīta (congenital paralysis), syndrōmum immunodeficientiae acquisītae (acquired immunodeficiency syndrome), tuberositas pterygoidea (pterygoid tuberosity), anaemia myelogenā (myelogenous anemia), arteria circumflexa humēri anterior (anterior circumflex humeral artery), orgānum vasculosum laminae terminalis (vascular organ of lamina terminalis), fissura longitudinalis cerēbri (longitudinal cerebral fissure), fasciculus uncinatus cerebelli (uncinate fasciculus of cerebellum), kyphosis thoracica (thoracic kyphosis), linea glutea inferior (inferior gluteal line), syndesmoses cranii (cranial syndesmoses), articulatio sacrococcygea (sacrococcygeal joint), segmentum anterius mediale (anterior medial segment), infundibulum vesicae felleae (infundibulum of gallbladder), muscoli palati mollis et faucium (muscles of soft palate and fauces), papilla duodeni major (major duodenal papilla), ostium atrioventriculare sinistrum (left atrioventricular orifice), membrāna bronchopericardiaca (bronchopericardial membrane), arteria pharyngea ascendens (ascending pharyngeal artery), tuberositas deltoidea (deltoid tuberosity).

PART II. ANATOMICAL TERMINOLOGY

LESSON 2

THE STRUCTURE OF LATIN ANATOMICAL TERMS. NOUNS AND THEIR GRAMMAR CATEGORIES

§ 17. The Latin terminology in anatomy and its structure

Anatomical terminology naming all parts of the human body is the base of medical terminology. For more than a century the so-called Terminologia Anatomica — The International Anatomical Terminology in Latin which is accepted by anatomists of the world, has existed. Latin is also the base for creating equivalent terms in other languages. The last edition of this International Anatomical Terminology appeared in 2011.

The anatomical term is a word or several words used to denote a definite unit or structure of the human body. So Latin anatomical terms may consist of one, two, three, four and more words — up to 8.

One-word terms consist of one noun in singular or plural:

cor (heart); fauces (fauces).

Two-word terms may consist of:

1. A noun with an adjective in singular or plural:

crista renālis (renal crest); nodi faciāles (facial nodes).

2. Two nouns in singular or plural:

corpus vertēbrae (body of vertebra); terminatiōnes nervōrum (nerve terminals).

Three-word terms may consist of:

1. Three nouns:

ala cristae galli (ala of crista galli); lamīna arcus vertēbrae (lamina of vertebral arch).

2. One noun plus two adjectives:

glandūlae salivariae minōres (minor salivary glands); plexus cervicālis posterior (posterior cervical plexus).

3. Two nouns plus one adjective:

arcus anterior atlantis (anterior arch of atlas); tuberositas ossis sacri (sacral tuberosity).

In multiword terms several nouns and adjectives can be presented:

fissūra horizontālis pulmōnis dextri (horizontal fissure of right lung);

processus uncinātus vertēbrae thoracīcae primae (uncinate process of first thoracic vertebra).

§ 18. Grammar categories of noun

The grammar categories in Latin noun are the following:

1. Gender. 2. Number. 3. Case. 4. Declension.

There are three genders in Latin: masculine (masculīnum **m**); feminine (feminīnum **f**); neutral (neutrum **n**).

English nouns, in contrast to Latin, have only a natural gender: nouns denoting males are masculine (boy, man), nouns denoting females are feminine (girl, women) and nouns denoting inanimate are of neutral gender (bone, vessel).

Latin nouns always have only grammar gender, which is determined by the ending, but what is more significant, by gender signs too (m, f, n). These gender signs are given in the dictionaries, where nouns are presented in the so-called word or dictionary form, which we shall discuss later.

As to the number, both English and Latin have two numbers — singular (singulāris) and plural (plurālis). Just like in English, the number of the noun in Latin shows whether we speak about one thing or more than one. Plural indications in English are very simple (endings -s or -es). In Latin, these indications are more numerous and are determined by the gender and declension. Plural endings will be discussed in detail in a special section.

Case as a grammar category is not presented in every language. It is absent, for example, in French, Italian and Spanish. As to English, we can speak about a «common case» and a «possessive case». In contrast to English in Latin there are six different forms of noun endings corresponding to each case. Only four case forms of Latin nouns are used in medical terms:

Nominatīvus, Nominative (answers the questions *who, what*)

Genetīvus, Genitive (answers the questions *whose, of what*)

Accusatīvus, Accusative (answers the questions *whom, what*)

Ablatīvus, Ablative (answers the questions *by whom, with what*).

The first two cases (Nominative and Genitive) are mainly used in the medical terminology, the other cases occur more rarely, they are used in anatomical and pharmaceutical terms in combination with prepositions.

§ 19. Dictionary form of nouns

It is of vital importance to always remember, that each Latin noun must be learnt in its «Dictionary form». This form consists of three components:

1. The full form of the Nominative singular.
2. The Genitive singular ending, indicating the type of declension.
3. Definition of the grammar gender (with the letters m, f, n):

Written form	Oral form	English equivalent of the noun
ala, ae f	ala, alae, feminīnum	wing
nervus, i m	nervus, nervi, masculīnum	nerve
cancer, cri m	cancer, cancri, masculīnum	cancer
ligamentum, i n	ligamentum, ligamenti, neutrum	ligament
Eucalyptus, i f	Eucalyptus, Eucalypti, feminīnum	eucalyptus
corpus, ōris n	corpus, corpōris, neutrum	body
cornu, us n	cornu, cornus, neutrum	horn

§ 20. Description of declensions

Nouns with the ending **-ae** in the Genitive singular belong **to the 1-st declension**; they are mainly feminine:

ala, ae f — wing crista, ae f — crest vertēbra, ae f — vertebra.

Nouns having the ending **-i** in the Genitive singular belong **to the 2-nd declension**.

Nouns of the **masculine gender** can have the ending **-us** in the Nominative (the greatest part) or **-er** (very limited in number):

angŭlus, i m — angle muscŭlus, i m — muscle nervus, i m — nerve
cancer, cri m — cancer (the full form of Genitive — **cancri**).

Nouns of the **neutral gender** have also two types: nouns with the ending form **-um** (the main part), and nouns with the ending form **-on** (they are of Greek origin), compare:

ligamentum, i n — ligament dorsum, i n — back
encephālon, i n — brain colon, i n — colon, large intestine.

The 3-rd declension is the most numerous one. Here are presented the nouns of all genders and with different endings in the Nominative having the ending **-is** in the Genitive. They are commonly divided into two groups.

The first one includes nouns having equal number of syllables in the Nominative and Genitive (so called *parisyllaba*):

basis, basis f (the written dictionary form basis, is f) — base
canālis, canālis m (canalis, is m) — canal.

The second and the most numerous part of the nouns have one more syllable in the Genitive compared to the Nominative (so called *imparisyllaba*):

apex, apĭcis m (apex, ĭcis m) — apex, top
tuberositas, tuberositātis f (tuberositas, ātis f) — tuberosity
forāmen, forāminis n (forāmen, ĩnis n) — foramen, opening.

If such nouns have only one syllable in the Nominative, then the complete form of the Genitive is:

dens, dentis m — tooth os, ossis n — bone pars, partis f — part.

The 4-th declension includes nouns of the masculine and neutral gender, having the ending **-us** in the Genitive:

processus, processus m (processus, us m) — process
ductus, ductus m (ductus, us m) — duct
cornu, cornus n (cornu, us n) — horn.

The 5-th declension includes nouns, having the ending **-ei** in the Genitive:
facies, faciēi f (facies, ēi f) — face, surface.

Attention! Remember the following:

1. Feminine nouns may occur in the 2-nd and 4-th declensions, masculine ones in the 1-st: oculista, ae m (ophthalmologist), Eucalyptus, i f (eucalyptus), manus, us f (hand).

2. Two groups of nouns of the Greek origin retain their particular form:

2.1. Feminine nouns with the ending -e in the Nominative and -es in the Genitive: raphe, es f (a seam on the mild tissue).

2.2. Masculine nouns with the ending -es in the Nominative and -ae in the Genitive: diabētes, ae m (diabetes).

The endings proper to each declension in the Nominative and Genitive are presented in the table below:

Declension	Gender	Ending in the Nom. sing.	Examples in the Nom. sing.	Ending in the Gen. sing.	Examples in the Gen. sing.
I	f	-a	costa	-ae	costae
II	m	-us	sulcus	-i	sulci
	n	-er	cancer		canceri
		-um	ligamentum		ligamenti
-on	encephalon	encephali			
III	m	different	apex	-is	apicis
	f	different	basis		basis
	n	different	foramen		foraminis
IV	m	-us	processus	-us	processus
	n	-u	cornu		cornus
V	f	-es	facies	-ēi	faciēi

§ 21. The stem of the noun and the way to determine it

The stem of the noun is essential for declining and word building. It is determined by removing the Genitive ending which indicates the type of the declension:

Dictionary form	Full form of the Genitive	Stem of noun
crista, ae f (rib)	crist-ae	crist-
sulcus, i m (furrow, groove, sulcus)	sulc-i	sulc-
cancer, cri m (cancer)	cancr-i	cancr-
forāmen, ĩnis n (opening)	foramĭn-is	foramĭn-
arcus, us m (arch)	arc-us	arc-
facies, ēi f (face, surface)	faci-ēi	faci-

§ 22. Exercises

1. Give in written the dictionary form of the following nouns:

apex, basis, canālis, cancer, cornu, corpus, cranium, dens, encephalon, facies, ganglion, lingua, mandibūla, nasus, nervus, orgānon, os, radix, scapūla, sternum, sulcus, tuber, tubercūlum, tuberositas.

2. Give in written the dictionary form of the following nouns and define their stem and declension:

abdomen, angle, arch, base, bone, canal, crest, duct, head, horn, ligament, lower jaw, nose, opening, region, root (radix), skin, skull, surface, tongue, tooth, upper jaw.

3. Write down the dictionary form of nouns, translate the terms into English:

apex linguae; angŭlus faciēi nasi; basis cranii; canālis radīcis dentis; corpus vertēbrae; facies tubercŭli costae; incisūra mandibŭlae; nervus encephāli; pars faciēi sterni; septum nasi; sulcus sinus; tuber maxillae.

4. Give the dictionary form of each noun, translate the terms into Latin:

abdomen cavity (= cavity of abdomen); arch of aorta; base of mandible; body of upper jaw; cancer of the skin; cavity of the nose; cervical part (= part of cervix); crest of the rib head (= crest of the head of rib); face bone (= bone of face); head of rib; nervous node of the neck; part of the process; region of skull; skin nerve (= nerve of skin); sternal angle (= angle of sternum); surface of knee; apex of the horn; vertebral arch (= arch of vertebra).

§ 23. Vocabulary to lesson 2

I. Latin-English vocabulary

Nouns of the 1st declension

costa, ae f	— rib
incisūra, ae f	— incisure, slit or notch
lingua, ae f	— tongue
mandibŭla, ae f	— mandible, lower jaw
maxilla, ae f	— maxilla, upper jaw
vertēbra, ae f	— vertebra

Nouns of the 2nd declension

angŭlus, i m	— angle	nervus, i m	— nerve
cancer, cri m	— cancer	orgānon, i n	— organ
cranium, i n	— skull	septum, i n	— septum, dividing wall
encephālon, i n	— brain	sternum, i n	— sternum, breast-bone
ganglion, i n	— ganglion, nervous node	sulcus, i m	— sulcus, furrow or groove
nasus, i m	— nose	tubercŭlum, i n	— tubercle, small rounded swelling

Nouns of the 3rd declension

apex, ĩcis m	— apex, tip	os, ossis n	— bone
basis, is f	— base	radix, ĩcis f	— radix, root
caput, ĩtis n	— head	regio, ōnis f	— region
canālis, is m	— canal	tuber, ěris n	— tuber, large rounded swelling
corpus, ōris n	— body	tuberositas, ātis f	— tuberosity
dens, dentis m	— tooth		

Nouns of the 4th declension

cornu, us n	— horn, horn-shaped process	sinus, us m	— sinus, hollow curvature or cavity
processus, us m	— process		

Nouns of the 5th declension

facies, ēi f — face, surface

II. English-Latin vocabulary

abdomen	— abdōmen, ĩnis n	mandible, lower jaw	— mandibŭla, ae f
aorta	— aorta, ae f	neck, cervix	— cervix, ĩcis f
angle	— angŭlus, i m	nerve	— nervus, i m

apex, tip	— apex, ĭcis m	nervous node, ganglion	— ganglion, i n
arch	— arcus, us m	nose	— nasus, i m
base	— basis, is f	part	— pars, partis f
body	— corpus, ōris n	process	— processus, us m
bone	— os, ossis n	region	— regio, ōnis f
cancer	— cancer, cri m	rib	— costa, ae f
cavity	— cavitas, ātis f	skin	— cutis, is f
cervical: see cervix		skull	— cranium, i n
cervix, neck	— cervix, ĭcis f	surface	— facies, ēi f
crest	— crista, ae f	sternal: see sternum	
duct	— ductus, us m	sternum	— sternum, i n
face	— facies, ēi f	tongue	— lingua, ae f
foramen, opening	— forāmen, ĭnis n	upper jaw, maxilla	— maxilla, ae f
head	— caput, ĭtis n	vertebra	— vertēbra, ae f
horn	— cornu, us n	vertebral: see vertebra	
knee	— genu, us n		
ligament	— ligamentum, i n		

LESSON 3

ADJECTIVES AND THEIR DICTIONARY FORM. ADJECTIVE AND NOUN AGREEMENT

§ 24. Introductory information about adjectives in Latin

Both in English and Latin the adjective is a word expressing the quality of a thing: long, short, nasal, simple and so on.

But in contrast to English, Latin adjectives have always grammar coordination with their nouns, that is a noun and an adjective must have the same gender, case and number. The adjective follows the noun.

According to their endings all Latin adjectives are divided into two groups.

§ 25. 1st group of adjectives

Adjectives which have three gender endings make up the 1-st group: Masculine forms have the ending **-us** or **-er**, Feminine — **-a**, Neutral — **-um**:

Masculine	Feminine	Neutral
longus (long)	longa	longum
liber (free)	libĕra	libĕrum
dexter (right)	dextra	dextrum

The dictionary form of adjectives includes the full masculine form, endings of the feminine and the neutral ones (when answering, every gender form is pronounced!). All these forms are in the Nominative:

longus, a, um — long	oral form: longus, longa, longum
liber, ĕra, ĕrum — free	oral form: liber, libĕra, libĕrum
dexter, tra, trum — right	oral form: dexter, dextra, dextrum.

In the last two adjectives the endings of the feminine and the neutral forms are enlarged. It is common for the adjectives with the ending **-er** in the masculine form, because it helps us determine, whether the vowel **-e** in the feminine and the neutral forms is lost or not.

The gender forms of the adjectives of this group have the declension pattern in the nouns of the 1-st and 2-nd declensions: feminine forms are declined like the nouns of the first declension, masculine and neutral forms — like the nouns of the second declension. The stem of these adjectives is determined like that of the nouns:

Gender form	Nominative	Genitive	Declension	Stem
masculine	longus	longi	second	long-
feminine	longa	longae	first	long-
neutral	longum	longi	second	long-
masculine	liber	libēri	second	liber-
feminine	libēra	libērae	first	liber-
neutral	libērum	libēri	second	liber-
masculine	dexter	dextri	second	dextr-
feminine	dextra	dextrae	first	dextr-
neutral	dextrum	dextri	second	dextr-

As to the adjectives with the masculine form **-er**, it is more convenient to determine their stem from the feminine Genitive form.

§ 26. 2nd group of adjectives

This group includes adjectives, following the rules of the third declension of nouns. According to their gender endings they are divided into three subgroups. The stem of this group of adjectives is determined like in the preceding group.

The first subgroup is made up of adjectives having three gender endings: **-er** for masculine, **-is** for feminine, **-e** for neutral:

Masculine form	Feminine form	Neutral form	Genitive form	Stem
acer (sharp, acute)	acris	acre	acris	acr-
celer (quick, fast)	celēris	celēre	celēris	celer-

The written dictionary form, as in the previous group, includes the full masculine form and the endings of the feminine and the neutral:

acer, crī, cre; celer, ēris, ēre.

When answering orally, every gender form is pronounced in full.

The second subgroup includes adjectives with two gender endings. Masculine and feminine forms have the common ending **-is**, neutral — the ending **-e**:

Masculine and feminine form	Neutral form	Genitive form	Stem
brevis (brief, short)	breve	brevis	brev-
frontālis (frontal)	frontāle	frontālis	frontal-
sacrālis (sacral)	sacrāle	sacrālis	sacral-

Adjectives of this subgroup are the most numerous in every branch of medical terminology.

The dictionary form of these adjectives consists of the full masculine / feminine forms and the ending of neutral:

brevis, e; frontālis, e; sacrālis, e.

The third subgroup is made up of adjectives with one ending, common for the three genders. There are four kinds of such common endings:

- 1) **-ns**: prominens (masculine, feminine, neutral) — prominent
- 2) **-s**: teres (masculine, feminine, neutral) — round
- 3) **-r**: par (masculine, feminine, neutral) — equal, pair
- 4) **-x**: simplex (masculine, feminine, neutral) — simple.

Let's look at these adjectives from the point of view of their Genitive form and their stem:

Gender form	Nominative form	Genitive form	Stem
masculine feminine neutral	prominens prominens prominens	prominentis	prominent-
masculine feminine neutral	teres teres teres	terētis	teret-
masculine feminine neutral	par par par	paris	par-
masculine feminine neutral	simplex simplex simplex	simplīcis	simplic-

The dictionary form of these adjectives includes the Nominative form and the Genitive ending (or complete Genitive form):

- sapiens, entis (oral form sapiens, sapientis)
 teres, ētis (oral form teres, terētis)
 par, paris (oral form par, paris)
 simplex, ĭcis (oral form simplex, simplīcis).

§ 27. Adjective and noun agreement

To agree an adjective and a noun in Latin means to say or to write these parts of speech in the same gender, number and case. To do it you should:

- 1) imagine or write dictionary forms of the noun and adjective;
- 2) correctly determine the gender, number and case of the noun;
- 3) place the noun in the first place of the term;
- 4) choose the correct grammar form of the adjective for this noun and put it in the second place (after the noun).

Let us take, e. g., the following word combinations: 1) sacral vertebra 2) carotid tubercle 3) palatine groove.

First of all, let us write down the dictionary form of every word:

sacral — sacrālis, e; vertebra — vertēbra, ae f; carotid — carotīcus, a, um;
 tubercle — tubercūlum, i n; palatine — palatīnus, a, um; groove — sulcus, i m.

Now, let us make up the procedure of agreement:

- 1) vertēbra: gender — feminine, number — singular, case — Nominative.

So in the dictionary form of adjective we choose the form *sacrālis* and agree it in this way with the noun *vertebra*: *vertēbra sacrālis*.

2) *tubercūlum*: neutral, singular, Nominative.

That's why we choose the adjective form *carotīcum* and make up the term *tubercūlum carotīcum*.

3) *sulcus*: masculine, singular, Nominative.

So for this noun we need the adjective form *palatīnus*. Writing down it after the noun *sulcus* we get as a result the term *sulcus palatīnus*.

If we have to agree two adjectives with one noun, the order of agreement is the following. The adjective indicating the main space location of the object (*cardiacus*, a, um — cardiac; *cervicālis*, e — cervical; *gastrīcus*, a, um — gastric and so on) is placed after the noun: right gastric artery — *arteria gastrica dextra*, deep lymphatic vessel — *vas lymphaticum profundum*.

One should be able not only to agree adjectives and nouns in the Nominative, but also make up the Genitive form from this Nominative construction. So, let's make the Genitive forms of the above mentioned Nominative forms:

1) *vertēbra sacrālis*: from the dictionary form of the noun we already know the Genitive form and write it down: *vertēbrae*. Now, we have to determine the Genitive form of *sacrālis*. As we have seen above, this adjective belongs to the third declension, that's why the Genitive form should have the ending -is, that is *sacrālis*, which finally makes in the Genitive the word combination *vertēbrae sacrālis*.

2) *tubercūlum carotīcum*: both the noun and the adjective belong to the second declension, that's why they have to receive the ending -i in the Genitive form — *tubercūli carotīci*.

3) *sulcus palatīnus*: *sulcus*, as it is evident from the dictionary form, belongs to the second declension, the ending -us in the adjective *palatinus* tells us that this form belongs to the second declension and so we can determine the Genitive form as *palatīni*. The whole term in Genitive form is *sulci palatīni*.

§ 28. The Comparative degree

To form the Comparative degree, it is necessary to find the stem of the Positive degree and add the suffix **-ior** for the masculine and feminine forms and **-ius** for the neutral form:

Positive form	Stem	Comparative masculine and feminine form	Comparative neutral form	Translation
<i>longus</i> , a, um (long) <i>simplex</i> , icis (simple)	long- simplic-	longior simplicior	longius simplicius	longer more simple

The dictionary form includes the Nominative form of the masculine and the feminine with the final element -ior and the final element -ius for neutral form:

longior, *ius* (written dictionary form) *longior*, *longius* (oral form)
simplicior, *ius* (written dictionary form) *simplicior*, *simplicius* (oral form).

Adjectives in the Comparative degree have the same pattern of declension as nouns of the third declension. Their distinctive feature is the final element **-ōris** in the Genitive:

Nominative form of Comparative	Genitive form of Comparative	Stem
longior (m, f) longius (n)	longiōris	longior-
simplicior (m, f) simplicius (n)	simpliciōris	simplicior-

The grammar agreement of the Comparative form with nouns follows the common rules:

Positive degree	Comparative degree
m m processus longus	m m processus longior
n n ligamentum longum	n n ligamentum longius
f f radix longa	f f radix longior
n n ganglion simplex	n n ganglion simplicius

§ 29. Comparative forms in anatomical terminology

In anatomical (and histological) terminology only limited forms of adjectives in the Comparative degree are used. First of all, Comparative forms of the adjectives great (large) and little (small) are used:

Positive degree of Latin adjective	English equivalents	Comparative form of Latin adjectives	English anatomical equivalents
magnus, a, um	great, large	maior (major), maius (majus)	greater, larger, major
parvus, a, um	little, small	minor, minus	lesser, smaller, minor

In the forms minor, minus we don't see the full final elements -ior, -ius, but that is a distinctive feature of these forms to remember.

In anatomical terminology four adjectives in the Comparative form are also used, although from the point of view of English, not every of such forms express comparison:

Latin masculine and feminine form	Latin neural form	Latin dictionary form	English anatomical equivalents
anterior	anterius	anterior, ius	anterior
posterior	posterius	posterior, ius	posterior
superior	superius	superior, ius	upper, superior
inferior	inferius	inferior, ius	lower, inferior

Thus, only 6 adjectives in the form of Comparative degree are used in Latin anatomical terminology:

Latin dictionary form	Genitive form	Stem
anterior, ius	anteriōris	anterior-
posterior, ius	posteriōris	posterior-
superior, ius	superiōris	superior-
inferior, ius	inferiōris	inferior-
major, jus	majōris	major-
minor, minus	minōris	minor-

We should note that the stem of the adjectives in the Comparative degree coincides with the Nominative masculine and feminine forms ending with -ior.

The Genitive singular form in the Comparative degree is formed by adding the ending **-is** to the stem.

It is necessary to remember, that Latin adjectives in the Comparative degree are always placed last in the multiword term:

facies articulāris superior — superior articular surface

musculus obliquus capitis inferius — inferior oblique muscle of head.

§ 30. The Superlative degree

Commonly, the Superlative degree is formed by adding the suffix **-issim-** and gender endings **-us, -a, -um** to the stem of the Positive degree:

Positive degree	Stem	Superlative degree	English equivalents
latus, a, um (broad, vast, wide)	lat-	latissimus, a, um	the broadest (vastest, widest), latissimus (in Anatomy)
longus, a, um (long)	long-	longissimus, a, um	the longest
subtilis, e (fine)	subtil-	subtilissimus, a, um	the finest

Some forms of Superlative degree are formed by special way:

Positive degree	Superlative degree	English anatomical equivalents
magnus, a, um (great)	maximus, a, um	the greatest, maximus
parvus, a, um (little, small)	minimus, a, um	the least, minimus

The dictionary form of adjectives in the Superlative degree is similar to adjectives of the first group with the endings -us, -a, -um. They are declined also like the adjectives of the first group and their stem is determined similarly.

§ 31. Peculiarities of the use of the comparison degrees of the adjectives **magnus, a, um** and **parvus, a, um** in Latin anatomical terminology

Now some notes about the use of Latin comparison degree forms that you should remember.

1. Forms **magnus / parvus** are used, if a solitary anatomical structure is indicated:

forāmen (occipitāle) magnum — foramen (occipital) magnum

arteria pancreatīca magna — greater pancreatic artery

vena magna cerēbri — great cerebral vein

nervus auriculāris magnus — great auricular nerve

muscūlus adductor magnus — adductor magnus (muscle)

nucleus magnus — large nucleus.

2. Forms major / minor are used, if dimensions of two similar and placed next to each other anatomical structures are compared:

ala major / ala minor — greater wing / lesser wing

pelvis major / pelvis minor — greater pelvis / lesser pelvis

nervus petrōsus major / nervus petrōsus minor — greater petrosal nerve / lesser petrosal nerve

muscūlus pectorālis major / muscūlus pectorālis minor — pectoral major muscle / pectoral minor muscle

musculus teres major / musculus teres minor — teres major muscle / teres minor muscle.

§ 32. Exercises

1. Give orally the dictionary form of the following adjectives:

articulāris, compositum, dextrum, frontālis, impar, interna, libĕrum, nasāle, palatīna, sapiens, simplex, teres, thoracīcum, minor, anterius, minus, superior.

2. Correspond the following adjectives with the nouns:

articulatio, ōnis f (compositus, a, um; sinister, tra, trum; simplex, ĭcis);

caput, ĭtis n (minor, us; longus, a, um; brevis, e);

cornu, us n (occipitālis, e; hyoideus, a, um; superior, ius);

facies, ēi f (costālis, e; posterior, ius; dexter, tra, trum);

ganglion, i n (impar, āris; sublinguālis, e; superior, ius);

ligamentum, i n (teres, ĕtis; brevis, e; minor, minus);

margo, ĭnis m (dexter, tra, trum; liber, ĕra, ĕrum; nasālis, e);

muscūlus, i m (teres, ĕtis; major, jus; latissĭmus, a, um);

nervus, i m (hypoglossus, a, um; occipitālis, e);

processus, us m (articulāris, e; palatīnus, a, um; brevis, e).

3. Give the dictionary form of each word and make up grammatical agreement of the adjectives with the nouns in Latin:

arch (dental, venous, left); artery (deep, lingual, right); bone (short, palatine, hyoid); canal (long, short, sacral); crest (lacrimal, external); duct (hepatic, sublingual); head (upper, lower); joint (complex, simple); process (palatine, costal); region (cervical, mastoid); tubercle (carotid, lateral); vein (deep, sacral); vertebra (prominent, thoracic); vessel (left, lymphatic).

4. Give the dictionary form of each word and translate the following terms into Latin in Nominative and Genitive cases:

articular surface; costal arch; deep lymphatic vessel; frontal crest; lateral vein; anterior ethmoidal opening; left hepatic duct; long ligament; medial root; labial artery; occipital angle; oval opening; palatine process; superficial vein; vertebral column; lesser wing; lower lip; greater petrosal nerve; teres minor muscle.

5. Write down the dictionary form and translate into English:

arcus anterior atlantis; concha nasālis suprēma; crista tubercūli majōris; facies anterior partis petrōsae; fossa cranii anterior; labium faciēi inferius; muscūlus longissīmus capītis; muscūlus palpēbrae superiōris; pars libēra membri superiōris; sulcus sinus petrōsi inferiōris.

§ 33. Vocabulary to lesson 3

I. Latin-English vocabulary

Nouns of the 1st declension

arteria, ae f — artery

concha, ae f — concha, shell

fossa, ae f — fossa, little hole

palpēbra, ae f — eyelid

Nouns of the 2nd declension

labium, i n — lip

ligamentum, i n — ligament

membrum, i n — limb

muscūlus, i m — muscle

Nouns of the 3rd declension

articulatio, ōnis f — joint

atlas, antis m — atlas, the first

cervical vertebra

margo, ĩnis m — margin, border

pars, partis f — part

Nouns of the 4th declension

arcus, us m — arch

Adjectives of the 1st group including forms of the Superlative degree

compositus, a, um — complex

dexter, tra, trum — right

hyoideus, a, um — hyoid (bone)

hypoglossus, a, um — hypoglossal (nerve)

latissīmus, a, um — latissimus (muscle), the broadest

longus, a, um — long

liber, ěra, ěrum — free

magnus, a, um — large (nucleus), magnum

(foramen), magnus (adductor (muscle)), great

(nerve, vein), greater (artery)

mastoideus, a, um — mastoid

palatīnus, a, um — palatine

petrōsus, a, um — petrosal (nerve, sinus), petrous (part)

sinister, tra, trum — left

sacer, cra, crum — sacral (bone)

suprēmus, a, um — supreme

Adjectives in the form of Comparative degree

anterior, ius — anterior

inferior, ius — inferior, lower

major, jus — major, greater

posterior, ius — posterior

superior, ius — superior, upper

minor, minus — minor, lesser

Adjectives of the 2nd group

alāris, e — alar

articulāris, e — articular

brevis, e — short

communīcans, ntis — communicating, communicative

costālis, e — costal

frontālis, e — frontal

impar, āris — impar, unpaired

nasālis, e — nasal

occipitālis, e — occipital

sacrālis, e — sacral

simplex, ĩcis — simple

sublinguālis, e — sublingual (except nerve and bone)

teres, ětis — round (except foramen)

II. English-Latin vocabulary

<p>arch — arcus, us m artery — arteria, ae f articular — articulāris, e carotid — carotīcus, a, um cervical — cervicālis, e column — columna, ae f complex — composītus, a, um costal — costālis, e crest — crista, ae f deep — profundus, a, um dental — dentālis, e greater, major — major, jus external — externus, a, um hepatic — hepaticus, a, um hyoid — hyoideus, a, um (os) joint — articulatio, ōnis f lacrimal — lacrimālis, e lateral — laterālis, e left — sinister, tra, trum lesser, minor — minor, minus lingual — linguālis, e long — longus, a, um lower, inferior — inferior, ius</p>	<p>lymphatic — lymphaticus, a, um mastoid — mastoideus, a, um medial — mediālis, e occipital — occipitālis, e oval — ovālis, e palatine — palatīnus, a, um petrosal — petrōsus, a, um prominent — promīnens, entis pterygoid — pterygoideus, a, um right — dexter, tra, trum sacral — sacrālis, e (except os) short — brevis, e simple — simplex, ĩcis sublingual — sublinguālis, e (except os and nervus) superficial — superficiālis, e upper, superior — superior, ius vein — vena, ae f venous — venōsus, a, um vertebral — vertebrālis, e vessel — vas, vasis n wing — ala, ae f</p>
--	---

LESSON 4

NOMINATIVE PLURAL OF NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES

§ 34. Nominative plural endings of nouns and adjectives

The Nominative plural forms for both nouns and adjectives are formed by adding the Nominative plural endings to their stem. These endings depend on the gender (especially in the 2nd, 3rd and 4th declensions) and declension of nouns and adjectives, as shown in this table:

Declension	Gender	Nominative singular	Stem	Nominative plural ending	Nominative plural form
I	f	vertebra thoracīca	vertebr- thoracic-	-ae	vertēbrae thoracīcae
II	m	sulcus dexter	sulc- dextr-	-i	sulci dextrī
	n	septum latum ganglion otīcum	sept- lat- gangli- otic-	-a	septa lata ganglia otīca

Declension	Gender	Nominative singular	Stem	Nominative plural ending	Nominative plural form
III	m	homo sapiens	homin-sapient-	-es	homīnes sapientes
	f	pars commūnis	part-commun-	-es	partes commūnes
	n	rete mirabīle	ret-mirabil-	-ia	retia mirabilia
		forāmen anteriorius	foramin-anterior-	-a	foramīna anteriōra
IV	m	processus	process-	-us	processus
	n	cornu	corn-	-ua	cornua
V	f	facies	faci-	-es	facies

As we can observe, only neutral nouns of the 3rd declension have two variants of the endings. The following rules of their ending differentiation are to be memorized.

1. Neutral nouns with the endings **-al**, **-ar**, **-e** in the Nominative singular get the ending **-ia**:

animal (Engl. animal) — animalia (Nom. plur.)

pulvīnar (Engl. pillow, anatom. pulvinar) — pulvinaria (Nom. plur.)

rete (Engl. net, network, anatom. network) — retia (Nom. plur.).

2. Neutral adjectives of the 3rd declension except adjectives in the Comparative form get the ending **-ia**:

Dictionary form	Neutral form	Stem	Nominative plural form
acer, cris, cre	acre	acr-	acria
celer, ěris, ěre	celěre	celer-	celeria
frontālis, e	frontāle	frontal-	frontalia
brevis, e	breve	brev-	brevia
promīnens, ntis	prominens	prominent-	prominentia
impar, āris	impar	impar-	imparia
simplex, ěcis	simplex	simplic-	simplicia

Nouns which don't belong to the first point of the shown above rule as well as adjectives in the Comparative form get the ending **-a** in the Nominative plural:

forāmen superius (sing.) — foramīna superiōra (plur.)

caput minus (sing.) — capīta minōra (plur.).

§ 35. Abbreviations of Nominative plural forms used in anatomical terms

A certain number of nouns in the anatomical terms is used in the shortened forms. You have to memorize these abbreviations:

Singular form		Plural form	
Full form	Abbreviation	Full form	Abbreviation
arteria	a.	arteriae	aa.
bursa	b.	bursae	bb.
forāmen	f.	foramīna	forr.
ganglion	gangl.	ganglia	gangll.
glandūla	gl.	glandūlae	gll.

Singular form		Plural form	
Full form	Abbreviation	Full form	Abbreviation
ligamentum	lig.	ligamenta	ligg.
muscūlus	m.	muscūli	mm.
nervus	n.	nervi	nn.
nucleus	nucl.	nuclei	nucll.
ramus	r.	rami	rr.
vagīna	vag.	vagīnae	vagg.
vena	v.	venae	vv.

§ 36. Exercises

1. Write down the dictionary form, translate each word combination into Latin and then make up the Nominative plural:

alveolar arch; cervical surface; coccygeal horn; deciduous tooth; greater palatine canal; impar ganglion; inferior nuchal line; jugular foramen; posterior tubercle; sphenoidal process; superior nasal meatus; temporal fossa; tympanic cavity; third molar tooth or wisdom tooth; zygomatic bone.

2. Write down the dictionary form and translate into English:

aa. ciliāres posteriōres breves; cartilagīnes laryngis; forr. palatīna minōra; gangll. pelvīca; gll. thyroideae accessoriae; labia oris; ligg. collateralia; mm. rotatōres cervīcis; nn. labiāles anteriōres; nomīna anatomīca; nucll. vestibulāres; orgāna oculī accessoria; ossa cranii; partes corpōris humāni; plicae palatīnae transversae; radīces craniāles; rr. dorsāles linguae; regiōnes membri superiōris; vv. temporāles profundae; dentes incisīvi.

3. Write down the dictionary form and translate into Latin:

auditory ossicles; blood vessels of retina; borders of the nail; cavities of the body; costal notches; cranial nerves and sutures; dental alveoli; eyebrows and eyelashes; general terms; incisive canals; lesser palatine foramina; minor salivary glands; incisors and canine teeth; planes, lines and regions; true and false ribs.

§ 37. Vocabulary to lesson 4

I. Latin-English vocabulary

Nouns of the 1st declension

glandūla, ae f — gland
papilla, ae f — papilla
plica, ae f — fold
sutūra, ae f — suture

Nouns of the 2nd declension

jugum, i n — yoke
muscūlus, i m — muscle
orgānum, i n — organ
ramus, i m — branch
rectum, i n — rectum

Nouns of the 3rd declension

impressio, ōnis f — impression
m. rotātor, ōris m — rotator (rotating muscle)
nomen, īnis n — name

Adjectives of the 1st group

accessorius, a, um	— accessory
anatomīcus, a, um	— anatomical
digitātus, a, um	— digitate
humānus, a, um	— human
incisīvus, a, um (dens)	— incisor (tooth)
otīcus, a, um	— otic
transversus, a, um	— transverse

Adjectives of the 2nd group

alveolāris, e	— alveolar	craniālis, e	— cranial
brevis, e	— short	dorsālis, e	— dorsal
cerebrālis, e	— cerebral	genitālis, e	— genital
ciliāris, e	— ciliary	labiālis, e	— labial
collaterālis, e	— collateral	vestibulāris, e	— vestibular

II. English-Latin vocabulary

alveolus — alveolus, i m	incisive — incisīvus, a, um
auditory — auditorius, a, um	jugular — jugulāris, e
blood — 1) sanguis, ĩnis m;	line — linea, ae f
2) sanguineus, a, um	mirabile — mirābilis, e
brachial — brachiālis, e	molar (tooth) — molāris, e (dens)
branch — ramus, i m	muscular — musculāris, e
canine — canīnus, a, um	nail — unguis, is m
common — commūnis, e	notch, slit, incisure — incisūra, ae f
cord — fascicūlus, i m	nuchal — nuchālis, e
costal — costālis, e	ossicle — ossicūlum, i n
deciduous — deciduus, a, um	permanent — permānens, ntis
foramen, opening — forāmen, ĩnis n	plane — planum, i n
yebrow — supercilium, i n	proper — proprius, a, um
eyelash — cilium, i n	retina — retīna, ae f
false — spurius, a, um	salivary — salivarius, a, um
fibular (=peroneal) — fibulāris, e	suture — sutūra, ae f
(=peronēus, a, um)	term — termīnus, i m
fold — plica, ae f	third — tertius, a, um
fossa — fossa, ae f	true — verus, a, um
general — generālis, e	trunk — truncus, i m
girdle — cingūlum, i n	wisdom — sapientia, ae f
impar — impar, āris	zygomatic — zygomatīcus, a, um

LESSON 5

GENITIVE PLURAL OF NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES

§ 38. Genitive plural endings of nouns and adjectives

Both nouns and adjectives get the Genitive plural forms by adding the Genitive plural endings to their stem, depending mostly on noun and adjective declension, as one may see in the following table:

Declension	Gender	Nominative singular	Stem	Genitive plural ending	Genitive plural form
I	f	vertēbra thoracīca	vertebr- thoracic-	-ārum	vertebrārum thoracicārum
II	m	sulcus dexter	sulc- dextr-	ōrum	sulcōrum dextrōrum
	n	ganglion otīcum	gangli- otic-		gangliōrum oticōrum
III	m	canālis brevis dens permanens	canal- brev- dent- permanent-	-ium	canalium brevium dentium permanentium
	f	pars laterālis	part- lateral-		partium lateralium
	n	os simplex rete articulāre	oss- simplic- ret- articular-		ossium simplicium retium articularium
	m	margo anterior	margin- anterior-	-um	margīnum anteriōrum
	f	articulatio inferior	articulation- inferior-		articulatiōnum inferiōrum
	n	forāmen majus	foramin- major-		foramīnum majōrum
IV	m	arcus	arc-	-uum	arcuum
	n	cornu	corn-		cornuum
V	f	facies	faci-	-ērum	faciērum

As we can see, masculine, feminine and neutral nouns and adjectives of the third declension have two variants of the endings.

The ending **-ium** is added to the stems of:

1. Parisyllaba, i. e. the masculine and feminine nouns which have equal number of syllables in the Nominative and Genitive: canālis, is m (canal); basis, is f (base).

2. Masculine, feminine and neutral nouns, if their stem ends with two consonants: dens, dentis m (tooth); pars, partis f (part); os, ossis n (bone).

3. Neutral nouns with the endings **-al**, **-ar**, **-e** in the Nominative singular: anīmal, ālis n (animal); calcar, āris n (calcar, spur); rete, is n (net, network).

4. Masculine, feminine and neutral adjectives in the Positive degree, see in the table above the adjectives brevis, e (short); permānens, ntis (permanent); laterālis, e (lateral); simplex, ĩcis (simple); articulāris, e (articular).

The ending **-um** is added to the stems of:

1. All nouns which don't belong to the three first groups of the explained above rules, see, e. g., in the table the nouns margo, ĩnis m (margin, border); articulatio, ōnis f (joint); forāmen, ĩnis n (opening).

2. Masculine, feminine and neutral adjectives in the Comparative degree, see in the table the adjectives anterior, ius (anterior); inferior, ius (inferior, lower); major, jus (major, greater).

Some Latin nouns are used only in plural and their dictionary forms are accordingly represented in the Nominative and Genitive plural: fauces, ium (faucium) f (fauces); species, ērum (speciērum) f (species).

Attention! The noun vas, vasis n in singular belongs to the third declension, but in plural — to the second one, compare: nervi vasis — nerves of a vessel, but nervi vasōrum — nerves of the vessels.

§ 39. Exercises

1. Write down the dictionary form of each word and make up Nominative singular and Genitive plural forms of each word combination:

anterior tubercle; costal process; floating rib; greater wing; internal base; left spur; greater opening; lesser sublingual duct; longitudinal ligament; long root; permanent tooth; posterior surface; respiratory region; right crest; sacral horn; short muscle; simple joint; venous network; vertebral canal.

2. Write down the dictionary form of each word and translate into English:

ligamenta ossiculōrum auditoriōrum; medulla ossium flava et rubra; muscūli arrectōres pilōrum; muscūli palati mollis et faucium; nervi vasōrum lymphaticōrum; ostia venārum pulmonalium; plexus cavernōsi conchārum; processus accessorius vertebrārum lumbalium; situs viscērum inversus; vagīnae fibrōsae digitōrum manus.

3. Give the dictionary form and translate into Latin:

arteries of lower limbs; dividing walls of the frontal sinuses; heads of the true, false and floating ribs; muscles of auditory ossicles; muscles of soft palate and fauces; nerves and vessels of the vessels; nodules of semilunar cusps; sinus of the *venae cavae* (*venae cavae* — Gen. Plur.!); surface of the canine teeth; tubercles of *thoracic vertebrae* (*thoracic vertebrae* — Gen. plur.!).

§ 40. Vocabulary to lesson 5

I. Latin-English vocabulary

Nouns of the 1st declension

medulla, ae f — marrow (bone marrow — medulla ossium)

vagīna, ae f — vagina, sheath (of the muscle)

Nouns of the 2nd declension

ossicūlum, i n — ossicle palātum, i n — palate

ostium, i n — opening, orifice pilus, i m — hair

Nouns of the 3rd declension

m. arrector, ōris m — arrector (muscle elevating hair)

viscus, ěris n;

usually viscēra, um n (plur.) — viscera, inner organs

fauces, ium f (plur.) — fauces

Nouns of the 4th declension

manus, us f — hand

Adjectives of the 1st group

auditorius, a, um — auditory flavus, a, um — yellow
 cavernōsus, a, um — cavernous inversus, a, um — inverse
 fibrōsus, a, um — fibrous ruber, bra, brum — red

Adjectives of the 2nd group

lumbālis, e — lumbar pulmonālis, e — pulmonary
 mollis, e — soft

II. English-Latin vocabulary

cuspid — valvūla, ae f permanent — permānens, ntis
 extensor (unbending muscle) — m. extensor, ōris m respiratory — respiratorius, a, um
 fals — spurius, a, um semilunar — semilunāris, e
 floating — fluctuans, ntis soft — mollis, e
 limb — membrum, i n spur, — calcar, āris n
 calcar
 nodule — nodūlus, i m stomach — gaster, tris f
 ossicle — ossicūlum, i n true — verus, a, um
 palate — palātum, i n wall — paries, ětis m

LESSON 6

THE ACCUSATIVE SINGULAR AND PLURAL OF THE NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES. PREPOSITIONS USED WITH THE ACCUSATIVE

§ 41. Accusative singular and plural endings

The Latin case Accusative reflects the direct object by answering the questions «Whom? What?». In this function it corresponds to the Russian case called «Винительный» or in German to the case Akkusativ.

Nouns masculine and feminine as well as adjectives get the Accusative forms by adding the corresponding endings to their stem, as one may see in the table below. Neutral nouns and adjectives don't have special Accusative endings: Accusative singular form corresponds to the form of the Nominative singular and the Accusative plural form — to the form of the Nominative plural:

Declension	Gender	Nominative singular	Acc. sing. ending	Accusative singular form	Acc. plur. ending	Accusative plural form
I	f	vena cava	-am	venam cavam	-as	venas cavas
II	m	ramus dexter sulcus palatīnus	-um	ramum dextrum sulcum palatīnum	-os	ramos dextros sulcos palatīnos
	n	ganglion otīcum septum longum	=Nom. sing.	ganglion otīcum septum longum	=Nom. plur. (-a)	ganglia otīca septa longa

Declension	Gender	Nominative singular	Acc. sing. ending	Accusative singular form	Acc. plur. ending	Accusative plural form
III	m	margo anterior nutriens canālis	-em	margīnem anteriōrem nutrientem canālem	-es	margīnes anteriōres nutrientes canāles
	f	pars laterālis basis simplex pelvis major	-em (-im)	partem laterālem basim simplicem pelvim majōrem	-es	partes laterāles bases simplices pelves majōres
	n	rete capillāre crus posterius	=Nom. sing.	rete capillāre crus posterius	=Nom. plur. (-a,-ia)	retia capillaria crura posteriora
IV	m	processus	-um	processum	-us	processus
	n	cornu	=Nom. sing.	cornu	=Nom. plur. (-ua)	cornua
V	f	facies	-em	faciem	-es	facies

Some ending variants are seen in the third declension. Nouns in the Accusative singular can get endings **-im** or **-em**. The ending **-im** should have:

1. Feminine nouns with the final element **-sis** in the Nominative singular: basis, is f (basis) — basim dosis, is f (dose) — dosim.
2. Nouns pelvis, is f (pelvis) — pelvim; febris, is f (fever) — febrim; tussis, is f (cough) — tussim.

§ 42. Prepositions used with the Accusative

Prepositions	Meaning	Examples	Translation
ad	1) to, toward 2) for 3) during, in	ad nervum trigeminum ad usum externum ad morbum hypertonicum	to the trigeminal nerve for the external use in the hypertonic disease
ante	1) before (time) 2) in front of (space)	ante operatiōnem ante pulmōnem dextrum	before the operation in front of the right lung
circum	(a)round	circum liēnem	around the spleen
contra	against, for	contra febrim	for the fever
in	in, into, on (to the question «where to?», Russian «куда?»)	in oesophāgum in partem dextram in canālem longum	into the oesophagus on the right part in the long canal
infra	below, under	infra cor	below (under) the heart
inter	among (more than two objects), between (two objects)	inter vasa manus inter duo ossa	among the vessels of the hand between two bones
intra	inside	intra thorācem	inside the thorax
per	1) through, via 2) by (means of)	per canālem opticum per ligamenta	through (via) the optic canal by (means of) the ligaments
post	1) after (time) 2) behind (space)	post operatiōnem post costam	after the operation behind the rib

Prepositions	Meaning	Examples	Translation
sub	under (to the question «where to?», Russian «куда?»))	sub scapŭlam dextram sub ganglion sub- mandibulāre	under the right shoulder blade under the submandibular ganglion
super, supra	above	super (supra) margĭnem sinistrum supra (super) labium superius	above the left margin above the upper lip

§ 43. Prefixes formed from the prepositions used with the Accusative

Prefixes and their variants	Meaning	Examples	Translation
ad- (ac-, af-, ap)	addition, movement nearer	adĭtus, us m accessorius, a, um affĕrens, ntis appendix, ĭcis f	aditus, entrance accessory afferent appendix
ante-	precedence in space or time	antebrachiālis, e antenatālis, e	antebrachial antenatal
circum-	disposition around some object	circumferentia, ae f	circuference
in- (im-)	1) moving inward 2) denial of any quality	infundibŭlum, i n impressio, ōnis f impar, āris innominātus, a, um	infundibulum impression impar, unpaired, odd innominate
infra-	disposition lower some object	infraorbitālis, e	infraorbital
inter-	disposition between some objects	interdentālis, e	interdental
intra-	disposition inside some object	intraarticulāris, e	intraarticular
per-	preservation in space or time	permānens, ntis	permanent
post-, retro-	disposition behind something in space or time	postcentrālis, e postoperatīvus, a, um retromolāris, e	postcentral postoperative retromolar
sub-	disposition under some object	submandibulāris, e	submandibular
super, supra	disposition over some object	superficiālis, e supratonsillāris, e	superficial supratonsillar

§ 44. Exercises

1. Give the dictionary form of each word; make up forms of the Nominative singular, Accusative singular and plural:

anterior margin; ascending artery; external base; frontal surface; greater pelvis; hepatic duct; left lung; lesser horn; lymphatic vessel; nasal bone; right part; respiratory system; short nerve; vertebral canal.

2. Give the dictionary form of each word, translate into English:

ad corōnam dentis; ante et post operatiōnem; ante labia; circum ocūlum sinistrum; in canālem dentis incisīvi; in radīcem longam; inter ossa; intra venam faciālem; sub gingīvam; per os; per pelvim minōrem; per rectum; sub linguam.

3. Give the dictionary form of each word, translate into Latin:

above the left eye; after death; among the incisors; before and after tooth extraction; between pulp and dentine; by means of the long canal; for cough; for internal (external) use; into the deep vein; inside the sublingual artery; on the superior surface of the tooth; round the mouth; through the upper lip; under the lingual surface; via the common carotid artery.

4. Give the dictionary form of each word, translate into Latin:

accessory cusp; postsulcal part; supratonsillar fossa; interalveolar septa; infraorbital canal; minor sublingual ducts; superficial part; retromandibular vein; cardiac impression; infrahyoid muscles; innominate substance.

§ 45. Vocabulary to lesson 6

I. Latin-English vocabulary

Prepositions with the Accusative

ad (Acc.)	—	1) to, toward 2) for 3) during, in
ante (Acc.)	—	1) before (time) 2) in front of (space)
circum (Acc.)	—	around, round
contra (Acc.)	—	against, for
in (Acc.)		
(to the question «where to?», Russian «куда?»)	—	in, into, on
infra (Acc.)	—	below, under
inter (Acc.)	—	among (more than two objects), between (two objects)
intra (Acc.)	—	inside
per (Acc.)	—	1) through, via 2) by (means of)
post (Acc.)	—	1) after (time) 2) behind (space)
sub (Acc.)		
(to the question «where to?», Russian «куда?»)	—	under
super, supra (Acc.)	—	above

Other words

adītus, us m	—	aditus	corōna dentis	—	crown (of tooth)
antrum, i n	—	antrum, cave	dens, dentis m	—	tooth
auriculāris, e	—	auricular	difficilis, e	—	difficult
corōna, ae f	—	crown	flavus, a, um	—	yellow

II. English-Latin vocabulary

Prepositions with the Accusative

above	—	super, supra (Acc.)
after	—	post (Acc.)
among	—	inter (Acc.)
around	—	circum (Acc.)
before	—	ante (Acc.)
behind	—	post (Acc.)
between	—	inter (Acc.)

by (means of)	— per (Acc.)
during, in	— ad (Acc.)
for	— ad (Acc.)
in	— in (Acc.) (to the question «where to?», Russian «куда?»)
in front of	— ante (Acc.)
inside	— intra (Acc.)
into	— in (Acc.) (to the question «where to?», Russian «куда?»)
on	— in (Acc.) (to the question «where to?», Russian «куда?»)
round	— see around
to, toward	— ad (Acc.)
through	— per (Acc.)
under	— infra, sub (Acc.) (to the question «where to?», Russian «куда?»)

Other words

ascending	— ascendens, ntis	extraction	— extractio, ōnis f
childbirth	— partus, us m	leg	— pes, pedis m
cough	— tussis, is f	operation	— operatio, ōnis f
death	— mors, mortis f	pulp	— pulpa, ae f
dentine	— dentīnum, i n	use	— usus, us m

LESSON 7

ABLATIVE SINGULAR AND PLURAL OF THE NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES. PREPOSITIONS USED WITH THE ABLATIVE

§ 46. Ablative and its formation

Ablative is the Latin case reflecting different circumstances and conditions which characterize the indirect object (mood of the action, time, place, reason and so one).

Both nouns and adjectives get the Ablative forms by adding the corresponding endings to their stems, as one may see in the table below:

Dec- lension	Gen- der	Nominative singular	Abl. sing. ending	Ablative singular form	Abl. plur. ending	Ablative plural form
I	f	vena cava	-ā	vena cava	-is	venis cavis
II	m	ramus dexter sulcus palatīnus	-o	ramo dextro sulco palatīno	-is	ramis dextris sulcis palatīnis
	n	ganglion otīcum septum longum		ganglio otīco septo longo		gangliis otīcis septis longis
III	m	margo anterior canālis nutriens	-e (i)	marginē anteriōre canāle nutrienti	-ibus	marginībus anteriorībus canalībus nutrientībus
	f	pars laterālis basis simplex		parte laterālī basi simplicī		partībus lateralībus basībus simplicībus
	n	rete capillāre crus posterius		reti capillāri crure posteriōre		retībus capillarībus crurībus posteriorībus
IV	m	processus	-u	processu	-ibus	processībus
	n	cornu	-u	cornu		cornībus
V	f	facies	-e	facie	-ēbus	faciēbus

Some ending variants are seen in the third declension. Nouns and adjectives in the Ablative singular can get endings **-e** or **-i**.

The ending **-i** is added to the stem of:

1. Neutral nouns with endings **-al**, **-ar**, **-e** in the Nominative singular (we have already mentioned about these nouns in the previous lessons): *animā*, *ālīs* n — *animāli*; *calcar*, *āris* n — *calcāri*; *rete*, *is* n — *reti*.

2. Feminine nouns: *pelvis*, *is* f (*pelvis*) — *pelvi*; *febris*, *is* f (*fever*) — *febri*; *tussis*, *is* f (*cough*) — *tussi*.

3. Feminine nouns with the final element **-sis**: *basis*, *is* f (*base*) — *basi*.

4. Masculine, feminine and neutral adjectives in the Positive degree as well as participles: *brevis*, *e* (*short*) — *brevi*; *capillāris*, *e* (*capillary*) — *capillāri*; *simplex*, *īcis* (*simple*) — *simplīci*; *fluctuans*, *ntis* (*floating*) — *fluctuanti*.

The ending **-e** is added to the stem of:

1. All nouns which don't belong to the three first groups of the explained above rules, — see, for example, in the table the nouns *margo*, *canālis*, *pars*, *crus*.

2. Masculine, feminine and neutral adjectives in the Comparative degree, — see in the table the adjective *anterior*, *ius* and *posterior*, *ius*.

§ 47. Prepositions used with the Ablative

Prepositions	Meaning	Examples	Translation
a, ab (before a vowel)	from	a sulco rhināli ab axe optīco	from rhinal sulcus from optical axis
cum	with	cum nervo faciāli cum febrī continua	with facial nerve with continued fever
de	1) about 2) from	de ossībus cranii de gingīva	about the skull bones from the gingiva (gum)
e (ex)	1) from (about the movement from within) 2) from, of (about material)	e canāle sacrāli e cavitāte abdomīnis ex fructībus Rosae e fibrīs elastīcis	from the sacral canal from the abdomen cavity of dog-rose fruits from elastic fibers
in	in, on (to the question «where?», Russian «где?»))	in cavitāte pleurāli in facie unguis	in the pleural cavity on the nail surface
pro	1) for 2) before	pro reti venōso guttae pro oculīs pro lingua	for venous network drops for eyes before the tongue
sine	without	sine pancreāte accessorio sine dentībus serotīnis	without accessory pancreas without wisdom teeth
sub	under (to the question «where?», Russian «где?»))	sub cute capītis sub narcōsi locāli	under the skin of head under a local anaesthesia

§ 48. Prefixes formed from the prepositions used with the Ablative

Prefixes and their variants	Meaning	Examples	Translation
a-, ab-	moving away	(muscūlus) abductor, ōris m	abductor (muscle)
com- (col-, con-, cor-)	1) movement together 2) junction	compositus, a, um collaterālis, e connectīvus, a, um m. constrictor, ōris m	complex collateral connective constrictor (muscle)
de-	1) movement downward 2) removing	deciduus, a, um m. depressor, ōris m depulpatio, ōnis f	deciduous (tooth) depressor (muscle) depulpatio
e- (ef-, ex-)	movement out	effērens, ntis m. extensor, ōris m	efferent extensor (muscle)
pre-, pro-	disposition before something in space or time	premolāris, e (dens) processus, us m promīnens, ntis	premolar (tooth) process prominent

§ 49. Exercises

1. Give the dictionary form of each word, make up the forms of Ablative singular and plural:

floating rib; right region; short nerve; sacral horn; inner base; left canal; long spur; lymphatic vessel; simple joint; bony tissue; continued fever; canine tooth; lesser pelvis; accessory pancreas.

2. Give the dictionary form of each word, translate from Latin into English:

glandūlae sine ductībus; in regionībus membri superiōris; sub muscūlis facialībus; pro reti venōso; cum febris continua; sub tunīca musculāri; a crista capītis costae; sanguis ex vena pro analýsi; ab angūlo inferiōre; de termīnis generalībus.

3. Give the dictionary form of each word, translate from English into Latin:

from the surface of knee; in the thoracic vein; under a local (general) anaesthesia; for external use; about the abdominal muscles; with a wandering kidney; without upper incisors; for nervous system; from the head to the feet.

4. Give the dictionary form of each word, translate into English:

dentes decidui; vasa efferentia; articulatio composita; muscūlus depressor supercīlii; ramus communicans cum nervo faciāli; nervi abducentes; processus promīnens.

§ 50. Vocabulary to the lesson 7

I. Latin-English vocabulary

Prepositions with the Ablative

a, ab (Abl.)	— from
cum (Abl.)	— with
de (Abl.)	— 1) about 2) from
e, ex (Abl.)	— from (about the movement from within) 2) from, of (about material)
in (Abl.) (to the question «where?», Russian «где?»)	— in, on
pro (Abl.)	— 1) for 2) before
sine (Abl.)	— without
sub (Abl.) (to the question «where?», Russian «где?»)	— under

Other words

abdūcens, ntis	— abducent	m. depressor, ōris m	— depressor (lowing muscle)
connectīvus, a, um	— connective	promīnens, entis	— prominent
continuus, a, um	— continued	scapūla, ae f	— scapula, shoulder blade
faciālis, e	— facial	structūra, ae f	— structure
generālis, e	— general	termīnus, i m	— term
humānus, a, um	— human	tunica, ae f	— 1) layer, coat 2) membrane
musculāris, e	— muscular		

II. English-Latin vocabulary

Prepositions with the Ablative

from	— a, ab (Abl.); e, ex (Abl.)
in	— in (Abl.) (to the question «where?»), Russian «где?»)
under	— sub (Abl.) (to the question «where?»), Russian «где?»)
for	— pro (Abl.)
about	— de (Abl.)
with	— cum (Abl.)
without	— sine (Abl.)

Other words

anaesthesia	— anaesthesia, ae f	medicine	— medicamentum, i n
continued	— continuus, a, um	tissue	— textus, us m
general	— generālis, e	wandering	— migrans, ntis
local	— locālis, e		

§ 51. Summary table of declensions and case endings

Declension	I		II		III		IV		V
	f	m	n	m f	n	m	n	f	
Nom. sing.	-ā	-us -er	-um -on	different		-us	-u	-es	
Gen. sing.	-ae	-i		-is		-us		-ēi	
Acc. sing.	-am	-um	=Nom. sing.	-em (-im)	=Nom. sing.	-um	=Nom. sing.	-em	

Declension	I	II		III		IV		V
Gender	f	m	n	m f	n	m	n	f
Abl. sing.	-ā	-o		-e (-i)		-u		-e
Nom. plur.	-ae	-i	-a	-es	-a (-ia)	-us	-ua	-es
Gen. plur.	-ārum	-ōrum		-um (-ium)		-uum		-ērum
Acc. plur.	-as	-os	=Nom. plur.	-es	=Nom. plur.	-us	=Nom. plur.	-es
Abl. plur.	-is	-is		-ībus		-ībus		-ēbus

§ 52. Model (sample) of the final test on anatomical terminology

1. Give the dictionary form of each word, translate the terms into English:

- 1) paries anterior gastris 2) frenulum labii inferioris 3) rr. dorsales linguae
 4) ligamenta ossiculorum auditoriorum 5) orgăna oculi accessoria 6) pro reti venoso

2. Give the dictionary form of each word, translate the terms into Latin:

- 1) deep lingual artery 2) teres minor muscle 3) surface of incisor 4) planes, lines and regions 5) heads of the true, false and floating ribs 6) by means of the long canal

To cope with this final test you have to review (revise) thoroughly every home task, because all the terms of this test have been taken from your exercises. But the most effective way to success is your thorough learning and preparation for every lesson during the time of your studies.

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

A

a, ab (Abl.) from
accessorius, a, um accessory
acusticus, a, um auditory
ad (Acc.) 1) to, toward 2) for
 3) during, in
adhaesio, ōnis f adhesion
adipōsus, a, um fat
aditus, us m aditus
ala, ae f wing
alāris, e alar
alveolāris, e alveolar
ampullāris, e ampullary
analýsis, is f analysis
anatomīcus, a, um anatomical
angūlus, i m angle
ante (Acc.) 1) before (time) 2) in front
 of (space)
antebrachium, i n antebrachium,
 forearm
anterior, ius anterior
antihēlix, ĭcis f; anthēlix, ĭcis f
 antihelix (anthelix)
antitrāgus, i m antitragus
antrum, i n antrum, cave
apex, ĭcis m apex, tip
apparātus, us m apparatus
appendix, ĭcis f appendix
arachnoideus, a, um arachnoid
arbor, ōris f tree
arbor vitae arbor vitae
arcus, us m arch
arteria, ae f artery
arteriōsus, a, um arterial
articulāris, e articular
articulatio, ōnis f joint
atlas, ntis m atlas, the first cervical
 vertebra
auditorius, a, um auditory
auricūla, ae f auricle, pinna
auriculāris, e auricular
auris, is f ear
axis, is m axis

B

basis, is f base
biliāris, e (=felleus, a, um) gall
 (+noun)
bipennātus, a, um bipennate
biventer, tra, trum two-bellied
brevis, e short
bulbus, i m (ocūli) eyeball

C

cadāver, ěris n cadaver (dead body)
calicūlus, i m (gustatorius) bud
canālis, is m canal
cancer, cri m cancer
canīnus, a um (dens) canine (tooth)
capsūla, ae f capsule
caput, ĭtis n head
cardiācus, a, um cardiac
carotīcus, a, um carotid
cartilāgo, ĭnis f cartilage
cauda, ae f tail
cavernōsus, a, um cavernous
cavitas, ātis f cavity
celer, ěris, ěre rapid, quick (pulse)
cerebellum, i n cerebellum
cerebrālis, e cerebral
cervicālis, e cervical
cervix, ĭcis f cervix
ciliāris, e ciliary
circum (Acc.) around, round
circumferentiālis, e circumferential
circumferentia, ae f circumference
coccygēus, a, um coccygeal
coccyx, ŷgis m coccyx, coccygeal
 bones
cochleāris, e cochlear
collaterālis, e collateral
communīcans, ntis communicating,
 communicative
composītus, a, um complex
concha, ae f concha, shell-shaped hole
connectīvus, a, um connective
continuus, a, um continued
contra (Acc.) against, for
cor, cordis n heart

cornu, us n horn, horn- shaped process
corōna, ae f crown
corpus, ōris n body
cortex, ĩcis m cortex, crust
costa, ae f rib
costālis, e costal
craniālis, e cranial
cranium, i n skull
crista, ae f crest
crus, cruris n 1) shank, leg;
2) crus, limb (of auditory ossicle);
3) bundle (of myocardium)
cum (Abl.) with
cutis, is f skin

D

de (Abl.) 1) about 2) from
deciduus, a, um deciduous
dens, dentis m tooth
dens canĭnus canine tooth
dens deciduus deciduous tooth
dens incisĭvus incisor (tooth)
dens molāris molar tooth
dens permānens permanent tooth
dens premolāris premolar tooth
dens sapientiae wisdom tooth
dentālis, e dental
dexter, tra, trum right
diamēter, tri f diameter
diaphragma, ātis n diaphragm
diencephālon, i n diencephalon
difficilis, e difficult
digastrĭcus, a um digastric
digitātus, a, um digitate
digĭtus, i m finger, toe
distālis, e distal
dorsālis, e dorsal
ductus, us m duct
duodēnum, i n duodenum
dura mater dura mater (the outermost meninx of the brain)
durus, a, um solid

E

e, ex (Abl.) 1) from (about the movement from within)
2) from, of (about material)
eminentia, ae f eminence
encephālon i n brain

endocrĭnus, a, um endocrine
et and
epitympanĭcus, a, um epitympanic
externus, a, um external
extracapsulāris, e extracapsular

F

faciālis, e facial
facies, ēi f face, surface
fascia, ae f fascia
fascia lata fascia lata
fauces, ium f (plur.) fauces
febris, is f fever
felleus, a, um (= biliaris, e) gall (+noun)
femĭna, ae f woman
femur, ōris n femur, thigh (bone)
fibra, ae f fibre
fibrōsus, a, um fibrous
flavus, a, um yellow
forāmen, ĩnis n foramen, opening
fossa, ae f fossa, little hole
frontālis, e frontal

G

ganglion, i n ganglion, nervous node
gaster, tris f stomach
gemma, ae f bud
generālis, e general
genitālis, e genital
gingĭva, ae f gingiva, gum
glandŭla, ae f gland
glomus, ěris n glomus, a cluster of blood vessels
gustatorius, a, um taste (+noun)

H

hemispherium, i n hemisphere
hepar, ātis n liver
hepatĭcus, a, um hepatic
homo, ĩnis m man
humānus, a, um human
hyoideus, a, um hyoid (bone)
hypochondriācus, a, um hypochondriac
hypogastrĭcus, a, um hypogastric
hypoglossus, a, um hypoglossal (nerve)

I

iliācus, a, um iliac
impar, āris impar, unpaired
impressio, ōnis f impression
imus, a, um imus (ima), the lowest
in (Acc., to the question «where to?»),
Russian «куда?») in, into, on; **(Abl.,
to the question «where?»)**, **Russian
«где?»**) in, on
incertus, a, um incerta (zona)
incisīvus, a, um (dens) incisor (tooth)
incisūra, ae f incisure, slit or notch
inferior, ius inferior, lower
infra (Acc.) below, under
inter (Acc.) among (more than two
objects), between (two objects)
interclaviculāris, e interclavicular
intercostālis, e intercostal
interlobāris, e interlobar
intermandibulāris, e intermandibular
internus, a, um internal
interosseus, a, um interosseal,
interosseous
interpedunculāris, e interpeduncular
interthalamīcus, a, um interthalamic
intervertebrālis, e intervertebral
intra (Acc.) inside
intraglandulāris, e intraglandular
intrajugulāris, e intrajugular
intraoccipitālis, e intraoccipital
inversus, a, um inverse
iris, ĭdis f iris, central part of the eye

J

jugum, i n yoke

L

labiālis, e labial
labium, i n lip
lamella, ae f lamella
larynx, ūngis m larynx
latus, a, um broad
liber, ěra, ěrum free
ligamentum, i n ligament
lingua, ae f tongue
longissīmus, a, um the longest
longitudinālis, e longitudinal
longus, a, um long

lumbālis, e lumbar
lymphaticus, a, um lymphatic

M

magnus, a, um large (nucleus),
magnum (foramen), magnus (adductor
(muscle)), great (nerve, vein), greater
(artery)
major, jus major, greater, larger
mandibŭla, ae f mandible, lower jaw
manus, us f hand
margo, ĩnis m margin, border
massēter, ēris m see below m.
masseter
mastoideus, a, um mastoid
mater, tris f mater, cerebral coat
maxilla, ae f maxilla, upper jaw
meātus, us m meatus, passage
medulla, ae f marrow
membrum, i n limb
mesencephalicus, a, um
mesencephalic
mesencephālon, i n mesencephalon
mesocōlon, i n mesocolon
metacarpālis, e metacarpal
metatarsus, i m metatarsus
minor, minus minor, lesser, smaller
minīmus, a, um minimus, the least
molāris, e (dens) molar (tooth)
mollis, e soft
musculāris, e muscular
musculus, i m muscle
m. adductor, ōris m adductor
(bringing muscle)
m. arrector, ōris m arrector (muscle
elevating hair)
m. levātor, ōris m levator (elevating
muscle)
m. massēter, ēris m masseter
(chewing muscle)
m. pronātor, ōris m pronator (muscle
turning the forearm)
m. rotātor, ōris m rotator (rotating
muscle)
m. sphincter, ēris m sphincter
(compressing muscle)
m. tensor, ōris m tensor (straining
muscle)

N

nasālis, e nasal
nasus, i m nose
nervus, i m nerve
nucleus, i m nucleus
nomen, ĩnis n name

O

occipitālis, e occipital
ocūlus, i m eye
operatio, ōnis f operation
orbĭta, ae f orbit
orgānon, i n organ
os, oris n mouth
os, ossis n bone
osseus, a, um bony
ossicūlum, i n ossicle
ostium, i n opening, orifice
otĭcus, a, um otic

P

palatĭnus, a, um palatine
palātum, i n palate
palpĕbra, ae f eyelid
pancreatĭcus, a, um pancreatic
parapharyngeālis, e parapharyngeal
paraventriculohypophysĭālis, e
paraventriculohypophysial
paravesicālis, e paravesical
paries, ĕtis m wall
parotideus, a, um parotid
pars, partis f part
partus, us m childbirth, delivery
parvus, a, um little, small
pecten, ĩnis m pecten, crest
pelvĭcus, a, um pelvic
pelvis, is f pelvis
per (Acc.) 1) through, via 2) by
(means of)
periventriculāris, e periventricular
permānens, entis (dens) permanent
(tooth)
pes, pedis m foot
petrōsus, a, um petrosal (nerve,
sinus), petrous (part)
phalanx, ngis f phalanx
pius, a, um (mater) pia (mater)
pilus, i m hair

planta, ae f sole
plexus, us m plexus, network, chiefly
of veins or nerves
plica, ae f fold
porta, ae f porta, gate of the liver
post (Acc.) 1) after (time) 2) behind
(space)
posterior, ius posterior
premolāris, e (dens) premolar (tooth)
preoccipitālis, e preoccipital
pro (Abl.) 1) for 2) before
processus, us m process
profundus, a, um deep
proprius, a, um proper
pubes, is f pubis
pulmo, ōnis m lung
pulmonālis, e pulmonary
pulsus, us m pulse
pupilla, ae f pupil
pyrāmis, ĩdis f pyramid

Q

quadrātus, a, um square, quadrate
(muscle), quadratus (pronator)

R

radix, ĩcis f radix, root
ramus, i m branch
recessus, us m recess
rectum, i n rectum
regio, ōnis f region
ren, renis m kidney
renālis, e renal
respiratorius, a, um respiratory
rete, is n 1) rete (mirabile) 2) network
(dorsal venous of hand)
retromandibulāris, e retromandibular
retropharyngĕus, a, um
retropharyngeal
rima, ae f fissure, opening
ruber, bra, brum red

S

sacrālis, e sacral
sanguis, ĩnis m blood
saphĕnus, a, um saphenous
sapiens, ntis intelligent, clever
sapientia, ae f wisdom
scapŭla, ae f scapula, shoulder blade

sectio, ōnis f section
segmentum, i n segment
semicirculāris, e semicircular
semilunāris, e semilunar
septum, i n septum, dividing wall
seu or
simplex, ĭcis simple
sine (Abl.) without
sinister, tra, trum left
sinus, us m sinus, hollow curvature or cavity
situs, us m site
spatium, i n space
spina, ae f spine
spinālis, e spinal
splanchnīcus, a, um splanchnic
squama, ae f squamous part, scales
sternum, i n sternum, breast-bone
structūra, ae f structure
sub (Acc., to the question «where to?»), Russian «куда?»; Abl., to the question «where?»), Russian «где?»)
under
sublinguālis e sublingual (except nerve and bone)
submandibulāris, e submandibular
submucōsus, a, um submucous
substantia, ae f substance
sulcus, i m sulcus, furrow or groove
super, supra (Acc.) above
superficiālis, e superficial
superior, ius superior, upper
supraorbitālis, e supraorbital
suprapleurālis, e suprapleural
suprarenālis, e suprarenal
suprēmus, a, um supreme, the highest
sutūra, ae f suture
symphĭsis, is f symphysis
synchondrōsis, is f synchondrosis
syndesmōsis, is f syndesmosis
systema, ātis n system

T

temporālis, e temporal
teres, ětis round (except foramen)
terminatio, ōnis f ending
termĭnus, i m term
textus, us m tissue
thoracīcus, a, um thoracic
thorax, ācis m thorax, chest
thyr(e)oideus, a, um thyroid
tractus, us m tract
tragus, i m tragus
transversus, a, um transverse
trigōnum, i n trigone
tuber, ěris n tuber, large rounded swelling
tubercŭlum, i n tubercle, small rounded swelling
tuberosĭtas, ātis f tuberosity
tumor, ōris m tumor, swelling, growth
tunĭca, ae f 1) layer, coat 2) membrane
tympanīcus, a, um tympanic

U

unguis, is m nail
utĕrus, i m uterus

V

vagĭna, ae f vagina, sheath (of the muscle)
vas, vasis n vessel
vena, ae f vein
venōsus, a, um venous
venter, tris m belly (of the muscle)
vermiformis, e vermiform
vertĕbra, ae f vertebra
vertebrālis, e vertebral
vesĭca, ae f bladder
vestibulāris, e vestibular
vestibŭlum, i n vestibule
vir, viri m man
viscus, ěris n; usually viscĕra, um n (plur.) viscera, inner organs
vita, ae f life
vomer, ěris m vomer

ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY

A

abdomen abdōmen, ĩnis n
abdominal abdominālis, e
about de (Abl.)
above super, supra (Acc.)
accessory accessorius, a, um
adductor (bringing muscle) (muscūlus)
 adductor, ōris m
after post (Acc.)
alveolar alveolāris, e
alveolus alveŏlus, i m
among inter (Acc.)
and et
anaesthesia anaesthesia, ae f
angle angŭlus, i m
anterior anterior, ius
aorta aorta, ae f
apex, tip apex, ĩcis m
arch arcus, us m
around circum (Acc.)
artery arteria, ae f
articular articulāris, e
ascending ascendens, ntis
auricular auriculāris, e
atlas atlas, antis m
auditory auditorius, a, um

B

back dorsum, i n
base basis, is f
before ante (Acc.)
behind post (Acc.)
between inter (Acc.)
bladder vesīca, ae f
blood 1) sanguis, ĩnis m;
 2) sanguineus, a, um (vas)
body corpus, ōris n
bone os, ossis n
bony osseus, a, um
border, margin margo, ĩnis m
brachial brachiālis, e
brain cerēbrum, i n
branch ramus, i m
breast mamma, ae f

broadest latissĭmus, a, um
bronchial bronchiālis, e
bursa (pouch, sac) bursa, ae f
by (means of) per (Acc.)

C

canal canālis, is m
cancer, cri m cancer
canine (tooth) canĭnus, a, um (dens)
cardiac cardiācus, a, um
carotid carotĭcus, a, um
cartilage cartilāgo, ĩnis f
cava, cavae cavus, a, um
cavity cavĭtas, ātis f
cell cellŭla, ae f
central centrālis, e
cerebellum cerebellum, i n
cervical cervicālis, e
cervix, neck cervix, ĩcis f
chiasm chiasma, ātis n
childbirth partus, us m
ciliary ciliāris, e
coccygeal coccygēus, a, um
colon colon, i n
column columna, ae f
common commŭnis, e
complex composĭtus, a, um
conjoint conjunctĭvus, a, um
constrictor (compressing muscle)
 (muscūlus) constrictor, ōris m
continued continuus, a, um
cord fascicŭlus, i m
costal costālis, e
cough tussis, is f
cranial craniālis, e
crest crista, ae f
crus crus, cruris n
culmen culmen, ĩnis n
curvature curvatŭra, ae f
cusp valvŭla, ae f

D

death mors, mortis f
deep profundus, a, um
dental dentālis, e
dentine dentĭnum, i n

depressor (lowing muscle) (muscūlus)
depressor, ōris m
diaphragm diaphragma, ātis n
digitus, digiti digītus, i m
distal distālis, e
dividing wall, septum septum, i n
division divisio, ōnis f
dorsal dorsālis, e
duct ductus, us m
during ad (Acc.)

E

ear auris, is f
endocrine endocrīnus, a, um
epigastric epigastrīcus, a, um
ethmoidal ethmoidālis, e
extensor (unbending muscle) (muscūlus)
extensor, ōris m
external externus, a, um
extraction extractio, ōnis f
eyebrow supercilium, i n
eyelash cilium, i n

F

face facies, ēi f
false spurius, a, um
falx falx, falcis f
fascia fascia, ae f
fauces fauces, ium f (plur.)
fever febris, is f
fibrous fibrōsus, a, um
fibular (= peroneal) fibulāris,
e (= peronēus, a, um)
fissure fissūra, ae f
flexor (bending muscle) (muscūlus)
flexor, ōris m
floating fluctuans, ntis
fold plica, ae f
foot pes, pedis m
for ad (Acc.), pro (Abl.)
foramen, opening forāmen, ĩnis n
forearm antebrachium, i n
forehead sincĭput, ĩtis n
forest silvestris, e
fornix fornix, ĩcis m
forth quartus, a, um
fossa fossa, ae f

free liber, ěra, ěrum
from a, ab (Abl.); e, ex (Abl.)
frontal frontālis, e

G

gall (+ noun) felleus, a, um (= biliāris, e)
gall bladder vesīca fellea
(= vesīca biliāris)
ganglion, nervous node ganglion, i n
gastric gastrīcus, a, um
general generālis, e
girdle cingŭlum, i n
gland glandŭla, ae f
gluteal glutēus, a, um
great magnus, a, um
greater, major major, jus
groove, furrow, sulcus sulcus, i m

H

hallux hallux, ūcis m
hand manus, us f
head caput, ĩtis n
heart cor, cordis n
hepatic hepaticŭs, a, um
highest suprēmus, a, um
horn cornu, us n
hyoid hyoideus, a, um (os)

I

ima imus, a, um
impar impar, āris
in in (Acc., to the question «where to?»),
Russian «куда?»; Abl., to the question
«where?», Russian «где?»)
incisive incisīvus, a, um
incisor (tooth) incisīvus, a, um (dens)
incus incus, ūdis f
index (index finger) index, ĩcis m
inferior, lower inferior, ius
in front of ante (Acc.)
inguinal inguinālis, e
inner internus, a, um
inside intra (Acc.)
intelligent sapiens, entis
interclavicular interclaviculāris, e
intercostal intercostālis, e
interlobar interlobāris, e
intermandibular intermandibulāris, e
internal internus, a, um

interosseal interosseus, a, um
interosseous interosseus, a, um
into in (Acc., when answering the question «where to?», Russian «куда?») **intraglandular** intraglandulāris, e
iris iris, īdis f

J

joint articulatio, ōnis f
jugular jugulāris, e

K

kidney ren, renis m
knee genu, us n

L

lacrimal lacrimālis, e
lactiferous lactifērus, a, um
large magnus, a, um
larynx larynx, ngis m
lateral laterālis, e
latissimus latissīmus, a, um
left sinister, tra, trum
leg pes, pedis m
lesser, minor minor, minus
ligament ligamentum, i n
limb membrum, i n
line linea, ae f
lingual linguālis, e
lip labium, i n
liver hepar, ātis n
local locālis, e
long longus, a, um
longest longissīmus, a, um
longitudinal longitudinālis, e
lower, inferior inferior, ius
lower jaw, mandible mandibŭla, ae f
lung pulmo, ōnis m
lymphatic lymphatīcus, a, um

M

magnus, magnum magnus, a, um
major, greater, larger major, jus
man homo, īnis m
mandible, lower jaw mandibŭla, ae f
margin, border margo, īnis m
mastoid mastoideus, a, um
meatus, passage meātus, us m
medial mediālis, e

medicine medicamentum, i n
membrane membrāna, ae f
membranous membranaceus, a, um
middle medius, a, um
minimum minīmus, a, um
minor, lesser minor, minus
mirabile mirabīlis, e
mobile mobīlis, e
molar (tooth) molāris, e (dens)
molar tooth dens molāris
mouth os, oris n
muscular musculāris, e
muscle muscŭlus, i m

N

nail unguis, is m
nasal nasālis, e
neck, cervix cervix, īcis f
nerve nervus, i m
nervous nervōsus, a, um
nervous node, ganglion ganglion, i n
network rete, is n
node nodus, i m
nodule nodŭlus, i m
nose nasus, i m
notch, slit, incisure incisŭra, ae f
nuchal nuchālis, e
nucleus nucleus, i m

O

occipital occipitālis, e
occiput occīput, ītis n
on in (Acc., to the question «where to?», Russian «куда?»; Abl., to the question «where?», Russian «где?») **opening, foramen** forāmen, īnis n
operation operatio, ōnis f
optic optīcus, a, um
or seu
ossicle ossicŭlum, i n
oval ovālis, e

P

palate palātum, i n
palatine palatīnus, a, um
palatini (veli) palatīnus, a, um
pancreas pancreas, ātis n
parapharyngeal parapharyngeālis, e
paravesical paravesicālis, e

parenchyma parenchýma, ātis n
parietal parietālis, e
part pars, partis f
pectoral pectorālis, e
pelvis pelvis, is f
pelvic pelvīcus, a, um
permanent permānens, ntis
peroneal peronēus, a, um
petrosal (nerve, sinus) petrōsus, a, um
petrous (part) petrōsus, a, um
phalanx phalanx, ngis f
pharynx pharynx, ngis m
plane planum, i n
plant planta, ae f
plexus plexus, us m
pollex, pollicis (thumb) pollex, ģcis m
posterior posterior, ius
preoccipital preoccipitālis, e
process processus, us m
prominent prominens, ntis
proper proprius, a, um
pterygoid pterygoideus, a, um
pulp pulpa, ae f
pulvinar pulvīnar, āris n
pyramide pyrāmis, ģdis f

R

radix, root radix, ģcis f
rectum rectum, i n
region regio, ōnis f
renal renālis, e
respiratory respiratorius, a, um
rete rete, is n
retina retīna, ae f
rhomboid rhomboideus, a, um
rib costa, ae f
right dexter, tra, trum
ring-shaped (= anular) anulāris, e
root, radix radix, ģcis f
rotator (rotating muscle) (muscūlus)
rotātor, ōris m
round see around

S

sacral sacrālis, e
salivary salivarius, a, um
saphenous saphēnus, a, um
segment segmentum, i n

semilunar semilunāris, e
septum septum, i n
short brevis, e
sinus sinus, us m
simple simplex, ģcis
skin cutis, is f
skull cranium, i n
small parvus, a, um
smaller, lesser, minor minor, minus
soft mollis, e
sole planta, ae f
space spatium, i n
sphenoidal sphenoidālis, e
splanchnic splanchnīcus, a, um
spleen lien, ēnis m
spur, calcar calcar, āris n
squamous squamōsus, a, um
sternal sternālis, e
sternum sternum, i n
stomach gaster, tris f
stroma stroma, ātis n
sublingual (except nerve and bone)
sublinguālis, e
submandibular submandibulāris, e
superficial superficiālis, e
superior, upper superior, ius
supraorbital supraorbitālis, e
suprapleural suprapleurālis, e
surface fācies, ēi f
suture sutūra, ae f
system systēma, ātis n

T

tail cauda, ae f
tegmen tegmen, ģnis n
temporal temporālis, e
tendon tendo, ģnis m
tensor (straining muscle) (muscūlus) tensor,
ōris m
term termīnus, i m
thalamus thalāmus, i m
thigh, femur femur, ōris n
third tertius, a, um
thoracic thoracīcus, a, um
thorax, chest thorax, ācis m
through per (Acc.)
thyroid thyr(e)oideus, a, um

tissue textus, us m
to ad (Acc.)
tongue lingua, ae f
tooth dens, dentis m
tip, apex apex, ĭcis m
transverse transversus, a, um
tree arbor, ōris f
trochanter trochanter, ēris m
true verus, a, um
trunk truncus, i m
tubercle tubercŭlum, i n
tympanic tympanĭcus, a, um

U

under infra (Acc.); sub (Acc., to the question «where to?», Russian «куда?»; Abl., to the question «where ?», Russian «где?») **upper, superior** superior, ius
upper jaw, maxilla maxilla, ae f
ureter urĕter, ēris m
use usus, us m

V

vein vena, ae f
velum (curtain) velum, i n
vena (vein) vena, ae f
venae see vena
venous venŏsus, a, um
ventricle vertricŭlus, i m
vertebra vertĕbra, ae f
vertebral vertebrālis, e
vessel vas, vasis n
vomer vomer, ěris m

W

wall paries, ětis m
wandering migrans, ntis
wisdom sapientia, ae f

Z

zygomatic zygomatĭcus, a, um

PART III. PHARMACEUTICAL TERMINOLOGY

LESSON 8

INTRODUCTION TO THE LATIN PHARMACEUTICAL TERMINOLOGY

§ 53. General information on the Latin pharmaceutical terminology

The words pharmacist, pharmaceutical, pharmacy etc. have in their origin the ancient Greek word *pharmacōn* that is drug, medicine. Historically, the names of drugs and their component parts as well as the names of drug forms and some other pharmaceutical terms, especially in medical prescriptions, are given in Latin. Nowadays, the use of Latin in the pharmaceutical practice of every country depends on national tradition and other factors. Namely, the tradition of using Latin both in the drugs names and medical prescriptions lasts in Russia, Republic of Belarus, Ukraine and some other European countries.

To the Latin pharmaceutical terms belong:

1. Names of drugs: *Amidopyrīnum* (amidopyrin), *Corvalōlum* (corvalol), *Streptocīdum* (streptocide).

2. Names of medicinal plants: *Belladonna* (belladonna), *Digitālis* (foxglove), *Quercus* (oak).

3. Names of chemical elements: *Kalium* (potassium), *Oxygenium* (oxygen), *Sulfur* (sulfur).

4. Adjectives: *Mentha piperīta* (pepper mint), *Species antiasthmaticae* (antiasthmatic species), *Suppositoria vaginalia* (vaginal suppositories).

5. Names of the drug forms: *Unguentum Tetracyclīni* (ointment of tetracycline), *Tabulettae Myelosāni* (tablets of myelosan), *Tinctūra Menthae* (tincture of mint).

6. Names of the parts of medicinal plants: *Tinctūra radīcis Valeriānae* (tincture of valerian root), *Herba Valeriānae* (herb of valerian), *Flores Chamomillae* (flowers of matricary).

7. Supplementary nouns and adjectives (mainly in medical prescriptions): *dosis* (dose), *numērus* (number), *talis* (such).

Now let us systematize the use of capital and small letters in the Latin pharmaceutical terms.

The capital letter is used:

1. In the names of drugs: *Codeīnum* (codeine), *Furacilīnum* (furacilin), *Validōlum* (validol).

2. In the names of medicinal plants: *Calendūla* (calendula), *Eucalyptus* (eucalyptus), *Frangūla* (buckhorn).

3. In the names of chemical elements: *Ferrum* (iron), *Oxygenium* (oxygen), *Zincum* (zinc).

Attention! Nouns of these three groups are written with capital letter in the dictionary form too: *Codeīnum*, i n; *Calendūla*, ae f; *Ferrum*, i n.

4. As the first letter of the names of the drug form, if this name is the first in the multiword term: Linimentum Streptocīdi (liniment of streptocide), Species antiasthmaticae (antiasthmatic species), Tinctūra Valeriānae (tincture of valerian).

5. As the first letter of the names of the plant component, if this name is the first in the multiword term: Herba Valeriānae (herb of valerian), Flores Chamomillae (flowers of matricary), Folia Menthae piperītae (pepper mint leaves).

The small letter is used:

1. In adjectives both in the structure of the term and in the dictionary form:

Mentha **piperīta** (pepper mint) — piperītus, a, um;

Acīdum **acetylsalicylicum** (acetylsalicylic acid) — acetylsalicylicus, a, um.

2. In the drug form names or the plant component names being not the first in the term structure as well as in the dictionary form of these names:

Acīdum acetylsalicylicum in **tabulettis** (acetylsalicylic acid in tablets) — tabuletta, ae f.

Decoctum **corticis** Quercus (decoction of oak bark) — cortex, ĩcis m.

3. If the drug form name or the plant component name is used without drug or plant names:

unguenta et linimenta (ointments and liniments); solutio ad usum externum (solution for external use); pulvĕres composīti (compound powders); folia et flores (leaves and flowers); radix et rhizōma (root and rhizome).

4. In constructions with a preposition indicating prescription, order of drug use or way of storage:

Solutio Furacilīni ad **usum externum** (solution of furacilin for external use); Tabulettae contra **tussim** (tablets for cough); Thea medicinālis pro **infantibus** (medicinal tea for children); Mixtio pro **inhalationibus** in **vitro nigro** (mixture for inhalations in dark phial).

Some other peculiarities of using capital or small letter in pharmaceutical terms will be further described in the subsequent parts of this textbook.

§ 54. The drug form names

Every drug is produced in a physical form most adequate for use. Traditionally, three main forms are used: solid, semisolid and liquid.

Solid forms:

Dragées (**dragée**, a French word which is used without latinization in plural and doesn't have any Latin dictionary form) — dragees

Granūla (**granulum, i n**) — granules of different form, containing drugs

Pilūlae (**pilūla, ae f**) — pills, small balls with drug

Pulvĕres (**pulvis, ěris m**) — powders

Species (**species, ěrum f**, only plural form) — species, mixture of different parts of medicinal plants

Tabulettae (**tabuletta, ae f**) — tablets

Theae (**thea, ae f**) — teas

Semisolid forms

Emplastra (**emplastrum, i n**) — plasters
Pastae (**pasta, ae f**) — pastes, thick ointments
Suppositoria (**suppositorium, i n**) — suppositories
Unguenta (**unguentum, i n**) — ointments

Liquid forms

Decocta (**decoctum, i n**) — decoctions
Emulsa (**emulsum, i n**) — emulsions
Extracta (**extractum, i n**) — extracts
Guttae (**gutta, ae f**) — drops (of liquids)
Infūsa (**infūsum, i n**) — infusions
Linimenta (**linimentum, i n**) — liniments
Mixtūrae (**mixtūra, ae f**) — mixtures
Mucilagīnes (**mucilāgo, ĩnis f**) — mucilages, liquids containing mucous substances
Olea (**oleum, i n**) — oils
Sirūpi (**sirūpus, i m**) — syrups
Solutiōnes (**solutio, ōnis f**) — solutions
Tinctūrae (**tinctūra, ae f**) — tinctures

Some other drug forms

Aërosōla (**aërosōlum, i n**) — aerosols
Capsūlae (**capsūla, ae f**) — capsules
Lamellae (=Membranūlae) ophthalmīcae (**lamella, ae f; membranūla, ae f**) — ophthalmic films with drug

§ 55. Components of medicinal plants

cortex, ĩcis m — cortex, bark	herba, ae f — herb
flos, floris m — flower	radix, ĩcis f — root
folium, i n — leaf	rhizōma, ātis n — rhizome
fructus, us m — fruit	semen, ĩnis n — seed

§ 56. Medicinal plants in the pharmaceutical terms

The medicinal plant names are mostly nouns of the 1-st declension:

Chamomilla, ae f — matricary Frangūla, ae f — buckhorn.

Some names are nouns of the 2-nd declension:

Leonūrus, i m — motherwort Millefolium, i n — milfoil.

Less numerous are nouns of the 3-rd declension:

Digitālis, is f — foxglove Adōnis, ĩdis m, f — Adonis.

Very rarely nouns of the 4-th declension are used: Quercus, us f — oak.

One should remember that names of trees are always feminine:

Eucalyptus, i f — eucalyptus Quercus, us f — oak.

Some plant names consist of a noun and an adjective:

Mentha piperīta — pepper mint Adōnis vernālis — spring Adonis.

The medicinal plant names occur:

1. In the names of liquid drug forms: Tinctūra Valeriānae — tincture of valerian; Decoctum corticis Quercus — decoction of oak bark.

2. In the labels of different packages containing the components of medicinal plants: Folia Urticae — leaves of nettle; Semen Lini — seed of flax.

3. As a component of the medical prescription:

Recīpe: Extracti Aloēs fluīdi 1 ml — Take: Liquid extract of aloe 1 ml

Recīpe: Corticis Crataegi 30,0 — Take: Cortex of hawthorn 30,0.

As we see, the name of the plant component is always placed before the plant name.

§ 57. The morphological structure of one-word Latin drug names

The one-word drug names usually consist of a noun root, a suffix (-īn- is the most common, then follow suffixes -ōl- and -īd-), and, finally, the most common ending — um:

Codeīnum — codein; Dibazōlum — dibazol; Saluzīdum — saluzid.

In the drug names are widely used specific Greek and Latin noun roots expressing certain pharmaceutical information. Knowledge of these morphological elements of most common usage enables to write correctly complicated drug names with a correct spelling, what is one of the main tasks of learning the pharmaceutical part of our subject. Let you memorize the first part of these morphological elements:

Morphological roots	Meaning	Latin examples	English equivalents
-cyclin-	antibiotics-tetracycline	Tetracyclīnum	tetracycline
-cyclo-	making an effect on the metabolic processes	Cycloserīnum	cycloserin
-menth-	product including mint	Menthōlum	menthol
-mycin-	antibiotics-streptomycin	Monomycīnum	monomycin
-myco-	antimycotic, against fungi	Mycoseptīnum	mycoseptin
-pyr-	influence on the body temperature	Antipyrīnum	antipyrin
-strept-	different pharmaceutical effects	Streptocīdum	streptocide

You should memorize prefixes of Greek origin used in drug name constructing:

Prefixes	Meaning	Latin examples	English equivalents
a-, an- (before a vowel)	denying, removing	Apressīnum Analgīnum	apressin analgin
anti-	acting against	antiasthmaticus	antiasthmatic
hyper-	increase, elevation	Hyperōlum	hyperol
hypo-	decrease, lowering	Hypothiazīdum	hypothiazid

§ 58. Some rules of building multiword pharmaceutical terms

Every multiword Latin pharmaceutical term begins, as a rule, with a drug **form** name. Then, the **drug** name follows. If the drug form has an adjective, this adjective is the last in the term:

Extractum Crataegi fluīdum — liquid extract of hawthorn

Tabulettae Tetracyclīni obductae — coated tablets of tetracycline.

Sometimes, the drug name is used without a drug form name, especially if prescription or way of storage is indicated:

Aether pro narcōsi — ether for narcosis

Cycloserīnum in capsūlis — cycloserin in capsules

Somatotropīnum humānum pro injectionībus — human somatotropin for injections

Thyreoidīnum in tabulettis — thyreoidin in tablets.

Latin names of drugs with compound composition can be enclosed into quotation marks or inverted commas. But English equivalents of these names are used without quotation marks or inverted commas, compare:

Aërosōlum «Camphomēnum» — aerosol of camphomen

Suppositoria «Anaesthesōlum» — suppositories of anaesthesol.

You can find in the dictionaries indication with which nouns these specific signs are used.

§ 59. Exercises

1. Write down the dictionary form of each word and translate into English:

Extractum Leonūri fluīdum; Linimentum Aloës; Rhizōma cum radicībus Valeriānae; Sirūpus ex fructībus Rosae; Solutio «Testosterōnum» pro injectionībus; Suppositoria vaginalia cum Synthomycīno; Tabulettae Aspirīni obductae; Tinctūra foliōrum Eucalypti; Unguentum Dibiomycīni ophthalmīcum.

2. Give the dictionary form of each word and translate into Latin:

antiasthmatic species; coated tablets of tetracycline; decoction of oak bark; tincture of pepper mint; dry extract of belladonna; ether for narcosis; herb of spring adonis; liquid extract of hawthorn; medicinal tea for children; pepper mint leaves; ointment of mycoseptin; powder of foxglove leaves; root and rhizome of valerian; simple and compound powders; tablets of antipyrin; tincture of matricary flowers.

§ 60. Vocabulary to lesson 8

I. Latin-English vocabulary

Aloë, ës f — aloe

Aspirīnum, i n — aspirin

cum (Abl.) — with

Dibiomycīnum, i n — dibiomycine

ex (Abl.) — of

pro (Abl.) — for

radix, īcis f — root

rhizōma, ātis n — rhizome

Rosa, ae f — dog-rose, wild rose

sirūpus, i m — syrup

extractum, i n — extract
Eucalyptus, i f — eucalyptus
fluīdus, a um — liquid
folium, i n — leaf
fructus, us m — fruit
injectio, ōnis f — injection
Leonūrus, i m — motherwort
linimentum, i n — liniment
obductus, a, um — coated
ophthalmīcus, a, um — ophthalmic

solutio, ōnis f — solution
suppositorium, i n — suppository
Synthomycīnum, i n — synthomycine
tabuleta, ae f — tablet
tinctūra, ae f — tincture
Testosterōnum, i n — testosterone
unguentum, i n — ointment
vaginālis, e — vaginal
Valeriāna, ae f — valerian

II. English-Latin vocabulary

adonis — Adōnis, ĩdis m, f
antiasthmatic — antiasthmaīcus, a, um
antipyrin — Antipyrīnum, i n
bark — cortex, ĩcis m
belladonna — Belladonna, ae f
children — infantes, ium m, f
coated — obductus, a, um
compound — composītus, a, um
decoction — decoctum, i n
dry — siccus, a, um
ether — aether, ěris m
extract — extractum, i, n
flower — flos, floris m
for — pro (+Abl.)
foxglove — Digitālis, is f
herb — herba, ae f
hawthorn — Crataegus, i f
leaf — folium, i n
liquid — fluīdus, a, um

matricary — Chamomilla, ae f
medicinal — medicinaīlis, e
mint — Mentha, ae f
mycoseptin — Mycoseptīnum, i n
narcosis — narcōsis, is f
oak — Quercus, us f
ointment — unguentum, i n
pepper — piperītus, a, um
powder — pulvis, ěris m
rhizome — rhizōma, ātis n
root — radix, ĩcis f
simple — simplex, ĩcis
species — species, ěrum f (only plur.)
spring — vernālis, e
tablet — tabuleta, ae f
tea — thea, ae f
tertracycline — Tetracyclīnum, i n
tincture — tinctūra, ae f
valerian — Valeriāna, ae f

LESSON 9

LATIN IN THE MEDICAL PRESCRIPTION. STANDARD VERB FORMS INDICATING ORDER AND INSTRUCTIONS IN MAKING UP THE LATIN PART OF PRESCRIPTION. GENERAL RULES OF MAKING UP THE LATIN PART OF PRESCRIPTION

§ 61. Current use of Latin in medical prescription

The use of Latin medical prescription nowadays is still common in many states of Europe, particularly in the countries of the former USSR including the Republic of Belarus and Russian Federation. That's why the rules of proper use of Latin in medical prescriptions are obligatory in medical university education programs of these states. Latin inscriptions are written on the labels of drug packing, reference books, and in medical prescriptions.

§ 62. The Imperative verb forms used in a simple medical prescription

The Latin part of a medical prescription begins with the Imperative form *Recīpe* (*Take*). This word is addressed to a pharmacist who has to prepare and to hand over a drug to a person.

If the drug is produced by a pharmaceutical plant then the prescription includes the name of this drug which is written after the *Recīpe*:

Recīpe: Unguenti Tetracyclīni 10,0

Take: Ointment of tetracycline 10,0

Recīpe: Extracti Crataegi fluīdi 25 ml

Take: Liquid hawthorn extract 25 ml.

After that in the new line two standard Imperative verb forms follow: *Da.* (*Give*) and *Signa* (*Write on the label*) so that the full prescription gets the following forms:

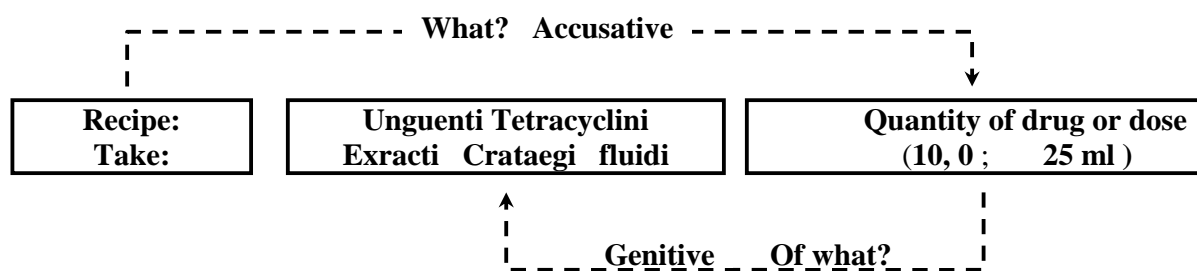
Recīpe: Unguenti Tetracyclīni 10,0 Take: Ointment of tetracycline 10,0

Da. Signa: Give. Write on the label:

Recīpe: Extracti Crataegi fluīdi 25 ml Take: Liquid hawthorn extract 25 ml

Da. Signa: Give. Write on the label:

One should pay attention to the fact that both the drug form and the drug name after the *Recīpe* are in the Genitive form. This case form depends on the quantity of the drug administered mainly in gram amounts (indicated in decimal points without the abbreviation gr.) and milliliter amounts with the abbreviation ml:



After the standard expression *Signa* (*Write on the label*) goes the signature, where the physician indicates the way of using the drug in the patient's native language.

So — from *Recīpe* to *Signa* — that is how the Latin part of the simple prescription, when the drug is kept at a drugstore in the prepared form, is written.

§ 63. The Conjunctive forms in medical prescription

The Imperative verb forms can be substituted (with some exception) by the Conjunctive mode forms. These Conjunctive forms are translated into English with the word combination «let it be»+ Participle II:

Imperative form	English equivalent	Conjunctive form	English equivalent
Adde	Add	Addātur	Let it be added
Da	Give	Detur Dentur tales doses	Let it be given Let such doses be given
Misce	Mix	Misceātur	Let it be mixed
Repēte	Repeat	Repetātur	Let it be repeated
Signa	Write on the label	Signētur	Let it be labeled
Sterilīsa!	Sterilize!	Sterilisētur!	Let it be sterilized!

One should remember, that the Imperative form *Recīpe* can never be replaced by the Conjunctive one.

The use of the Imperative or Conjunctive forms depends only on the physician writing out the medical prescription. As to students, they are to be able to write correctly the grammar form of an order or an instruction according to the initial Latin or English verb form.

§ 64. The structure of a complex medical prescription

Sometimes the physician asks the pharmacist to prepare a drug in the pharmacy. In this case, he writes down all components of this drug. Such a prescription is called a complex one. Naturally, in such prescription the physician indicates some components to be mixed: *Misce* (*Mix*). He can also define more precisely, what purpose the mixing is necessary for — that is for making some drug form. In this case, two forms are used: *fiat* for the nouns in singular and *fiant* for the nouns in plural:

Misce, fiat pulvis — Mix to make a powder

Misce, fiant suppositoria vaginalia — Mix to make vaginal suppositories.

One should remember, that the Imperative form *Misce* only is used in the combination with the forms *fiat* and *fiant*.

Sometimes, the physician indicates in which form and in what amount the drug is to be prepared. In this case, he writes down these standard forms:

Da (Dentur) tales doses numēro ... in tabulettis (ampullis, capsūlis etc.) — Give such doses (Let such doses be given) in the amount ... in tablets (ampoules, capsules etc.).

If two or more components are taken in the same amount, the dose is indicated only after the latter one, and the adverb *ana* (*of each*) is written before this amount:

Recīpe: Corticis Frangūlae
Foliōrum Urtīcae ana 15,0

Take: Cortex of buckthorn
Leaves of nettle of each 15,0

Now, let's see some complex medical prescriptions with different standard phrases:

Recīpe:	Sulfadimezīni Streptocīdi Synthomycīni ana 1,0 Misce, fiat pulvis Detur Signētur:	Take:	Sulfadimezine Streptocide Synthomycin of each 1,0 Mix to make a powder Let it be given Let it be labeled:
Recīpe:	Euphyllīni 0,2 Butyri Cacāo 2,0 Misce, fiat suppositorium Da tales doses numēro 6 Signa:	Take:	Euphyllin Cocoa oil 2,0 Mix to make a suppository Give such doses in the amount 6 Write on the label:

§ 65. Some peculiarities of quantity expression in the medical prescription

Sometimes, the amount of oils or other liquids can be indicated in drops. The number of drops is written in Roman figures. If one drop is indicated, so the Accusative singular form *guttam* is used, if more than one, the Accusative plural form *guttas*:

Recīpe:	Olei Menthae piperītae guttam I	Take:	Pepper mint oil I drop
Recīpe:	Olei Eucalypti guttas V	Take:	Eucalyptus oil V drops

In some cases, the physician doesn't indicate the dosage of a complex prescription component and lets the pharmacist determine the quantity of this component on his own. In this case, the standard expression *quantum satis* (*in sufficient amount*) is used:

Recīpe:	Chinosōli 0,03 Acīdi borīci 0,3 Tannīni 0,06 Olei Cacāo quantum satis, fiat suppositorium vagināle Da tales doses numēro 6 Signa:	Take:	Chinosol 0,03 Boric acid 0,3 Tannin 0,06 Cocoa oil in sufficient amount to make vaginal suppository Give such doses in the amount 6 Write on the label:
---------	---	-------	---

§ 66. Some important rules for making up the Latin part of medical prescription

1. Every new line begins with the capital letter.
2. Every first letter of the following new line is written strictly under the first letter of the previous one.
3. If the prescription text is to be continued in the next line, the first letter in the next line should begin under the fourth letter of the previous one.
4. Any correction in the prescription text is forbidden.

§ 67. Morphological roots of plant origin indicating alkaloids and glycosides with different pharmaceutical effects

Morphological roots	Latin examples	English equivalents
-anth-	Galanthamīnum, i n Helianthus, i m	Galanthamin sunflower
-eph-, -ephedr-, -phedr-	Ephatīnum, i n Ephedrīnum, i n Theophedrīnum, i n	ephatin ephedrine theophedrin
-glyc(y)-	Glycerīnum, i n Corglycōnum, i n Glycyrrhīza, ae f	glycerin corglycon licorice
-phyll-	Euphyllīnum, i n Platyphyllīnum, i n	euphylline platyphylline
-phyt-	Phytīnum, i n Phytolysīnum, i n	phytin phytolysin
-stroph-	Strophanthus, i m Strophosānum, i n	strophanthus strophosan
-the(o)-	Theobromīnum, i n Theophyllīnum, i n	theobromine theophylline

§ 68. Exercises

1. Give the dictionary form of each word, translate the terms into English:

Capsūlae Phytomenadiōni; Emulsum olei Helianthi; Granūla Glycyrāmi; Pulvis Phytīni pro infantibus; Solutio Corglycōni in ampullis; Solutio Glucōsi pro injectionibus; Suppositoria cum Euphyllīno; Tabulettae «Theophedrīnum»; Theophyllīnum in tabulettis.

2. Give the dictionary form of each word, translate the terms into Latin:

aerosol of ephatin; dry (liquid) extract of licorice; glyceric solution of ichthyol; oily solution of phytomenadion; pectoral species; tincture of strophanthus; sunflower oil for emulsion; suppositories with theophylline; sublingual tablets of glycin.

3. Write down the dictionary form of the nouns and adjectives as well as standard verb forms indicating order or instruction in medical prescription; translate the texts of medical prescriptions into Latin:

1. Take: Soluble streptocide 5,0
Solution of glucose 10 %
— 100 ml
Mix. Let it be sterilized!
Give. Write on the label:

2. Take: Theophylline 0,2
Cocoa oil 2,0
Mix to make a rectal
suppository
Give. Write on the label:

- | | |
|--|---|
| <p>3. Take: Tincture of strophanthus 5 ml
Tincture of lily of the valley
Tincture of valerian of each 10 ml
Let it be mixed
Let it be given
Let it be labeled:</p> <p>5. Take: Solution of strophanthine
0,05 % — 1 ml
Give such doses in the amount 10
in ampoules
Write on the label:</p> <p>7. Take: Chloroform
Sunflower oil of each 20 ml
Mix to make a liniment
Let it be given
Let it be labeled:</p> | <p>4. Take: Root of althea
Root of licorice
Seed of flax of each 10,0
Leaves of eucalyptus 2,5
Mix to make a species
Give. Write on the label:</p> <p>6. Take: Oily solution of nitroglycerin
1 % — 0,0005
Let such doses be given in
the amount 20 in capsules
Let it be labeled:</p> <p>8. Take: Ichthyol 3,0
Vaseline up to 30,0
Mix to make an ointment
Give.
Write on the label:</p> |
|--|---|

§ 69. Vocabulary to lesson 9

I. Latin-English vocabulary

ampulla, ae f — ampoule	infans, ntis m, f — child
capsūla, ae f — capsule	oleum, i n — oil
Corglycōnum, i n — corglycon	Phytīnum, i n — phytin
cum (Abl.) — with	Phytomenadiōnum, i n — phytomenadion
emulsum, i n — emulsion	pro (Abl.) — for
Euphyllīnum, i n — euphylline	pulvis, ěris m — powder
Glycyrāmum, i n — glycyram	solutio, ōnis f — solution
Glucōsum, i n — glucose	tabuleta, ae f — tablet
granūlum, i n — granule	Theophedrīnum, i n — theophedrine
Helianthus, i m — sunflower	Theophyllīnum, i n — theophylline
in (Abl.) — in	

II. English-Latin vocabulary

aerosol — aērosōlum, i n	of each — ana
althea — Althaea, ae f	oil — oleum, i n
amount — numērus, i m	oily — oleōsus, a, um
ampoule — ampulla, ae f	pectoral — pectorālis, e
capsule — capsūla, ae f	phytomenadion — Phytomenadiōnum, i n
chloroform — Chloroformium, i n	rectal — rectālis, e
cocoa — Cacāo (without a dictionary form)	root — radix, ĩcis f
dose — dosis, is f	such — talis, e
dry — siccus, a, um	seed — semen, ĩnis n
extract — extractum, i n	soluble — solubīlis, e
ephatin — Ephatīnum, i n («Ephatīnum»)	solution — solutio, ōnis f
emulsion — emulsum, i n	species — species, ěrum f (plur.)
eucalyptus — Eucalyptus, i f	streptocide — Streptocīdum, i n
flax — Linum, i n	suppository — suppositorium, i n
for — pro (Abl.)	strophanthine — Strophanthīnum, i n
glucose — Glucōsum, i n	strophanthus — Strophanthus, i m
glyceric — glycerinōsus, a, um	sublingual — sublinguālis, e
glycin — Glycīnum, i n	sunflower — Helianthus, i m
	tincture — tinctūra, ae f

ichthyol — Ichthyōlum, i n
 leaf — folium, i n
 licorice — Glycyrrhīza, ae f
 lily of the valley — Convallaria, ae f
 liniment — linimentum, i n
 nitroglycerin — Nitroglycerīnum, i n

theophylline — Theophyllīnum, i n
 up to — ad (Acc.)
 valerian — Valeriāna, ae f
 vaseline — Vaselīnum, i n
 with — cum (Abl.)

LESSON 10

THE USE OF THE ACCUSATIVE OF SOME PHARMACEUTICAL FORMS IN THE FIRST LINE OF A MEDICAL PRESCRIPTION

§ 70. General information on the use of the Accusative of the pharmaceutical forms in a medical prescription

The Accusative of some pharmaceutical forms is used only in a simple medical prescription. This is the way of prescribing tablets, dragees, suppositories, ophthalmic films, aerosols and sponges for different medical purposes. The name of these pharmaceutical forms is written in the Accusative singular or plural. The Latin drug name in the Nominative form is sometimes enclosed into inverted commas or quotation marks, which are omitted in the English text, where in this case the common construction with preposition *of* is used. The amount of the prescribed drug is hereby not indicated in grams or in milliliters but is expressed by the word *numĕrus* (*number*) in the Ablative form (*numĕro*) and a common figure. In the second line the standard verb forms are written:

Recĭpe:	Tabulettas «Antistrumĭnum» numĕro 50	Take:	Tablets of antistrumin number 50
	Detur.		Let it be given
	Signetur:		Let it be labelled:
Recĭpe:	Tabulettas Aloĕs obductas 0,05 numĕro 20	Take:	Coated tablets of aloe 0,05 number 20
	Da		Give
	Signa:		Write on the label:

As in English drug names inverted commas or quotation marks are not used, it is impossible when translating to find out which Latin equivalent drug name with these specific signs is to be written. That is why when translating from English into Latin we have to consult the dictionary and to find out whether the drug name is enclosed into inverted commas or quotation marks or not. So, if we see in the dictionary: Benspar — Benspārum, i n («Benspārum»), we know, how the Latin drug name is to be written correctly, for example:

Recĭpe:	Capsūlas «Benspārum» numĕro 100	Take:	Capsules of benspar number 100
	Give		Da.
	Write on the label:		Signa:

§ 71. The prescription of tablets in the Accusative case

The drug prescription in tablets may proceed in three forms.

In the first case after *Recīpe* the Accusative singular form *Tabulettam* is written, then follow the drug name in the Genitive form and the dose. In the second line of the prescription the instruction *Da (Dentur) tales doses numĕro...* is written and after that the standard verb form *Signa (Signĕtur)* follows:

Recīpe: Tabulettam Paracetamōli 0,3	Take: Tablet of paracetamol 0,3
Da tales doses numĕro 6	Give such doses in the amount 6
Signa:	Write on the label:

In the second case after *Recīpe* the Accusative plural form *Tabulettas* is written, then follow the drug name in the Genitive form and figures indicating the amount of active medical substance of a tablet and, finally, the dosage expressed by the *numĕro* and a figure:

Recīpe: Tabulettas Paracetamōli 0,3	Take: Tablets of paracetamol 0,3
numĕro 6	number 6
Da	Give
Signa:	Write on the label:

But the same drug can be prescribed in a traditional form indicating the drug quantity, and that is the third way of drug prescribing in the tablet form. In this case after *Recīpe* the drug name and its dose follow. In the second line the instruction *Da (Dentur) tales doses numĕro ... in tabulettis* and, finally, the standard form *Signa (Signĕtur)* are written:

Recīpe: Paracetamōli 0,3	Take: Paracetamol 0,3
Da tales doses numĕro 6	Give such doses in the
in tabulettis	amount 6 in tablets
Signa:	Write on the label:

It is absolutely imperative that every doctor is to know all the ways of writing out medical prescriptions. But the choice of a prescription form is up to him.

§ 72. The prescription of dragees in the Accusative case

Dragees (as the equivalent in Latin pharmaceutical terminology the French word *dragées* is used) are now prescribed mainly in the plural form. From the grammar point of view, the *dragées* is considered as Accusative depending on the word *Recīpe*, but as a French word, it doesn't have case and dictionary form. The prescription regulations for dragees are the following. After the *Recīpe* follows the form *Dragées*, the drug name in inverted commas (quotation marks) or in the Genitive form and the Ablative case *numĕro* with a figure indicating the dose:

Recīpe: Dragées «Undevītum»	Take: Dragees of undevit
numĕro 3	number 30
Detur	Let it be given
Signetur:	Let it be labelled:

One should add that sometimes, some other order of dragees prescription is used. In this case, after *Recīpe* the singular form *Dragée* is written with the drug name in the Genitive and a figure indicating the dose. In the second line follows the phrase *Da (Dentur tales doses) numěro...*:

Recīpe: Dragée Diazolīni 0,05	Take: Dragee of diazolin 0,05
Da tales doses numěro 20	Give such doses in the
Signa:	amount 20
	Write on the label:

§ 73. The prescription of ophthalmic films in the Accusative case

Ophthalmic films are absorbable gelatin films containing drug substances. They are used instead of ophthalmic drops when keeping such a film under the eyelid at night.

The ophthalmic films are usually prescribed with the preposition *cum*. The prescription regulations for the ophthalmic films are the following. The verb *Recīpe* is followed by the Accusative plural forms *Lamellas* (or *Membranūlas*) *ophthalmīcas*, the preposition *cum* with the name of the active pharmaceutical component in the Ablative and the form *numěro* with a figure. In the second and third lines the standard phrases *Da (Dentur) tales doses numěro ...* and *Signa (Signētur)* are written:

Recīpe: Lamellas ophthalmīcas cum	Take: Ophthalmic films with
Novocaīno numěro 8	novocain number 8
Da. Signa:	Give. Write on the label:

§ 74. The prescription of suppositories in the Accusative case

A pharmaceutical suppository is a drug in the form of a round or conical tablet which is solid at room temperature and semisolid at body temperature. They distinguish the rectal suppository and the vaginal one. The prescription regulations for the suppositories are the following:

1. *Recīpe* is followed by the Accusative plural form *Suppositoria* with the adjective *vaginalia (rectalia)* or without these adjectives, the drug name in inverted commas and the *numěro* with a figure. The second and the third lines contain the standard phrases *Da (Dentur)* and *Signa (Signētur)*:

Recīpe: Suppositoria vaginalia	Take: Vaginal suppositories of osarbon
«Osarbōnum» numěro 10	number 10
Da. Signa:	Give. Write on the label:

2. *Recīpe* is followed by the Accusative plural form *Suppositoria*, the preposition *cum* and the name of the active pharmaceutical component in the Ablative, a figure indicating the amount of this component, the form *numěro* with a figure. After that the standard forms *Da (Detur)* and *Signa (Signētur)* follow in the next lines:

Recīpe: Suppositoria cum Diprophyllīno 0,5 numĕro 30	Take: Suppositories with diprophylline 0,5 number 30
Detur	Let it be given
Signetur:	Let it be labelled:

§ 75. The prescription of aerosols in the Accusative case

An aerosol contains the drug in a gaseous form which is contained in a small cylinder provided with a valve.

Aerosols are prescribed in the Accusative singular form in two ways:

1. *Recīpe* is followed by the Accusative singular form *Aĕrosōlum*, its name in inverted commas and the *numĕro* with a figure. After that the standard forms *Da (Detur)* and *Signa (Signĕtur)* follow in the next lines:

Recīpe: Aĕrosōlum «Proposōlum» numĕro 2	Take: Aerosol of proposol number 2 Give
Da	Write on the label:
Signa:	

2. *Recīpe* is followed by the Accusative singular form *Aĕrosōlum* and its name in inverted commas or quotation marks. In the second line the standard phrase *Da (Detur) tales doses numĕro* is written:

Recīpe: Aĕrosōlum «Proposōlum» Da tales doses numĕro 2	Take: Aerosol of proposol Give such doses in the amount 2
Signa:	Write on the label:

§ 76. Morphological roots

Morphological roots	Meaning	Latin examples	English equivalents
-aesthes-, -aesth-, -asthes-, -esthes-	correction of sensitivity	Anaesthesīnum, i n Aesthocīnum, i n Bellasthesīnum, i n Pavesthesīnum, i n	anaesthesin aesthocin bellasthesin pavesthesin
-cain-	anesthetic effect	Novocai-num, i n Ultracai-num, i n	novocain ultracain
-camph-	influence on the central and peripheral nervous system	Bromcamphōra, ae f Camphonium, i n	bromcamphora camphonium
-erythr-, -eryth-, -ery-	1) containing erythromycin 2) produced from erythrocytes	Erythromycīnum, i n Eryhaemum, i n Erycyclīnum, i n	erythromycin eryhaem erycycline
-haem-	haemostatic or haematopoiesis stimulating effect	haemostatīcus, a, um Haemostimulīnum, i n	haemostatic haemostimulin
-oestr-	female genital hormones	Oestradiōlum, i n Synoestrōlum, i n	oestradiol synoestrol
-test-	male genital hormones	Medrotestrōnum, i n Testosterōnum, i n	medrotestron testosteron

Morphological roots	Meaning	Latin examples	English equivalents
-thym-	immunity stimulators produced by thymus	Thymalīnum, i n Thymoptīnum, i n	thymalin thymoptin
-thyr-	correction of thyroid function	Thyroidīnum, i n Rifathyroīnum, i n	thyroidin rifathyroin

§ 77. Exercises

1. Give the dictionary form of each word, translate from Latin into English:

Ampullae cum pulvĕre Rifathyroīni; Granūla Erycyclīni in capsūlis; Injectiōnes Thymalīni pro adultis; Lamellae ophthalmīcae cum Dicaīno; Pulvis Dicaīni crystallisātus; Solutio Pyromecaīni pro infusionibus intravenōsis; Spongia haemostatica in vitro vitreo; Suppositoria «Anaesthesōlum»; Thyreoidīnum in tabulettis.

2. Give the dictionary form of each word, translate from English into Latin:

anaesthesin for narcosis; camphoric spirit for trituration; eryhaem in vitreous phials; haemostatic plaster of feracryl; oily solution of synoestrol in the ampoules; testoenat for injections; tablets of pregoestrol; solution of thymogen for intranasal introduction.

3. Give the dictionary form of the nouns and the adjectives as well as standard verb forms indicating order or instruction in medical prescription; translate into Latin:

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Take: Coated tablets of allochol for children number 25
Give. Write on the label: | 2. Take: Capsules of oestradiol 0,14 number 12
Give. Write on the label: |
| 3. Take: Thyreoidin 0,05
Let such doses be given in the amount 50 in tablets
Let it be labelled: | 4. Take: Solution of haemophobin 5 ml
Give such doses in the amount 10 in ampoules
Write on the label: |
| 5. Take: Erynit 0,1
Give such doses in the amount 20 in tablets
Write on the label: | 6. Take: Ophthalmic films with neomycin number 8
Let it be given
Let it be labelled: |
| 7. Take: Vaginal suppositories with synthomycin 0,15 number 10
Give. Write on the label: | 8. Take: Aerosol of camphomen
Give such doses in the amount 2
Write on the label: |
| 9. Take: Haemostatic collagenic sponge
Let such doses be given in the amount 4 in plastic packets
Let it be labelled: | 10. Take: Anaesthesin 2,5
Cocoa oil in sufficient amount to make a rectal suppository
Let such doses be given in the amount 50 in tablets
Let it be labelled: |

§ 78. Vocabulary to lesson 10

I. Latin-English vocabulary

adultus, a, um	— adult	intravenōsus, a, um — intravenous
ampulla, ae f	— ampoule	lamella, ae f — film (ophthalmic)
Anaesthesōlum, i n	— anaesthesol	ophthalmicus, a, um — ophthalmic
capsūla, ae f	— capsule	Pyromecaīnum, i n — pyromecain
crystallisātus, a, um	— crystal	pulvis, ěris m — powder
Dicaīnum, i n	— dicain	Rifathyroīnum, i n — rifathyroin
Erycyclīnum, i n	— erycyclin	spongia, ae f — sponge
granūlum, i n	— granule	Thymalīnum, i n — thymalin
haemostatīcus, a, um	— haemostatic	Thyreoidīnum, i n — thyreoidin
infusio, ōnis f	— infusion	vitrum, i n — glass
		vitreus, a, um — vitreous

II. English-Latin vocabulary

aerosol	— aērosōlum, i n
alcohol	— Allochōlum, i n («Allochōlum»)
ampoule	— ampulla, ae f
anaesthesin	— Anaesthesīnum, i n
camphomen	— Camphomēnum, i n («Camphomēnum»)
camphoric	— camphorātus, a, um
collagenic	— collagenīcus, a, um
eryhaem	— Eryhaemum, i n
erynit	— Erynītum, i n
erythromycin	— Erythromycīnum, i n
feracryl	— Feracrȳlum, i n («Feracrȳlum»)
glass	— vitrum, i n
haemophobin	— Haemophōīnum, i n
haemostatic	— haemostatīcus, a, um
in sufficient amount	— quantum satis
intranasal	— intranasālis, e
introduction	— introductio, ōnis f
narcosis	— narcōsis, is f
neomycin	— Neomycīnum, i n
number	— numĕrus, i m
oestradiol	— Oestradiōlum, i n
oily	— oleōsus, a, um
packet	— fascis, is m
phial	— flaco, ōnis m
plaster	— emplasrum, i n
plastic	— polyaethylenīcus, a, um
pregoestrol	— Praegoestrōlum, i n
rectal	— rectālis, e
spirit (alcohol)	— spirītus, us m
sponge	— spongia, ae f
synthomycin	— Synthomycīnum, i n
synoestrol	— Synoestrōlum, i n
testoenat	— Testoenātum, i n
trituration	— trituratō, ōnis f
thymogen	— Thymogĕnum, i n
vaginal	— vaginālis, e
vitreous	— vitreus, a, um

LESSON 11
LATIN NAMES OF CHEMICAL ELEMENTS, ACIDS, OXIDES,
HYDROXIDES, PEROXIDES

§ 79. Latin names of chemical elements

Latin names of chemical elements are, as a rule, nouns of the second declension and of the neutral gender beginning always with a capital letter:

Aluminium, i n — aluminum Ferrum, i n — iron Zincum, i n — zinc.

Names of two chemical elements are exception from this rule:

Phosphorus, i m — phosphorus

Sulfur, ūris n — sulphur (in American English the spelling is sulfur).

Some elements have double names:

fluorine — Fluōrum, i n = Phthorum, i n

magnesium — Magnium, i n = Magnesium, i n.

See the chemical element names of most common usage in the table below:

Latin chemical symbols	Latin names	English names
Al	Aluminium	aluminium
Ag	Argentum	silver
As	Arsenīcum	arsenic
Au	Aurum	gold
Ba	Barium	barium
Bi	Bismŭthum	bismuth
Br	Bromum	bromine
Ca	Calcium	calcium
C	Carboneum	carbon
Cl	Chlorum	chlorine
Cu	Cuprum	copper
Fe	Ferrum	iron
F	Fluōrum seu Phthorum	fluorine
Hg	Hydrargŷrum	mercury
H	Hydrogenium	hydrogen
I	Iōdum	iodine
K	Kalium	potassium
Li	Lithium	lithium
Mg	Magnium seu Magnesium	magnesium
Mn	Mangānum	manganese
Na	Natrium	sodium
N	Nitrogenium	nitrogen
O	Oxygenium	oxygen
Pb	Plumbum	lead
P	Phosphorus	phosphorus
Si	Silicium	silicon
S	Sulfur	sulfur
Zn	Zincum	zinc

§ 80. Latin names of acids

Every Latin acid name consists of the noun *acĭdum* (*acid*) and an adjective of the first group with the ending **-um** in accordance with the rules of grammar agreement. One should, hereby, pay attention, that in the dictionary form, both nouns and adjective are written with a small letter but in the combination with adjectives the noun *acĭdum* is written with a capital letter:

acĭdum, i n — acid borĭcus, a, um — boric **but:** Acĭdum borĭcum.

There are three variants of Latin acid names. The first two variants cover the names of acids which include oxygen, the last one — the names of acids without oxygen.

In the first variant, when an acid contains the greatest amount of oxygen, the suffix **-ic-** and the ending **-um** are added to the stem of a chemical element name. English equivalents of these Latin adjectives have the suffix **-ic-** as a final element:

Latin name of chemical element	The stem	Latin adjective indicating the acid	The full Latin name of the acid	The full English name of the acid
Sulfur, ůris n	sulfur-	sulfurĭcus, a, um	Acĭdum sulfurĭcum (H ₂ SO ₄)	sulfuric acid

The same way of acid names building is used when names of organic acids are formed:

Latin noun	The stem	Latin adjective indicating the acid	The full Latin name of the acid	The full English name of the acid
lac, lactis n (milk)	lact-	lactĭcus, a, um	Acĭdum lactĭcum	lactic acid

In the second variant when the acid of the same element contains lesser amount of oxygen, the suffix **-os-** is used. In this case English equivalents have the ending **-ous**:

Latin noun	The stem	Latin adjective indicating the acid	The full Latin name of the acid	The full English name of the acid
Sulfur, ůris n	sulfur-	sulfurōsus, a, um	Acĭdum sulfurōsum (H ₂ SO ₃)	sulfurous acid

In the third variant, when an acid doesn't contain oxygen, the prefix **hydro-** and the suffix **-ic-** are added to the stem:

Latin noun	The stem	Latin adjective indicating the acid	The full Latin name of the acid	The full English name of the acid
Sulfur, ůris n	sulfur-	hydrosulfurĭcus, a, um	Acĭdum hydrosulfurĭcum (H ₂ S)	hydrosulfuric acid

One should remember that in acid names (as well as in salt names) formed from the noun *Nitrogenium* only a part of the stem is used: **nitr-**:

Acĭdum nitrĭcum — nitric acid Acĭdum nitrōsum — nitrous acid.

§ 81. Latin names of oxides, hydroxides, peroxides

Latin names of oxides, hydroxides, peroxides consist of two words. The first one is always the Genitive form of a chemical element, then the Nominative form *oxĭdum* (*hydroxĭdum*, *peroxĭdum*) follows:

Zinci oxĭdum — zinc oxide

Aluminii hydroxĭdum — aluminum hydroxide

Hydrogenii peroxĭdum — hydrogen peroxide.

The names *oxĭdum*, *hydroxĭdum*, *peroxĭdum* are nouns of the neutral gender of the second declension:

oxĭdum, i n hydroxĭdum, i n peroxĭdum, i n.

§ 82. Morphological roots reflecting chemical information

Morphological roots	Meaning	Latin examples	English equivalents
- (a)z- , - (a)zid- , - (a)zin- , - (a)zol- , - (a)zon-	presence of nitrogen in the heterocyclic compounds	Azaleptĭnum, i n Phthivazĭdum, i n Sulfapyridazĭnum, i n Norsulfazĕlum, i n Sibazĕnum, i n	azaleptin ftivazide sulfapyridazin norsulfazol sibazon
- benz-	presence of benzene ring	Benzohexonium, i n benzoĭcus, a, um	benzohexon benzoic
- cyan-	cyanic acid, its anions or a cyan group	Cyanocobalamĭnum, i n cyanĭdum, i n	cyanocobalamin cyanide
- hydr- , - hyd-	presence of hydrogen, water or a hydroxyl group	Hydrogenium, i n Formaldehĭdum, i n	hydrogen formaldehyde
- naphth-	products of petroleum	Naphthalĕnum, i n Naphthyzĭnum, i n	naphthalan naphthyzin
- oxy-	presence of oxygen and its compounds	Chinoxydĭnum, i n Oxylidĭnum, i n	chinoxydin oxylidin
- phtha(l)-	derivatives of phthalic acid	Phthalazĕlum, i n Phthazĕlum, i n	phthalazol phthazol
- phthor-	presence of fluorine compounds	Phthoracizĭnum, i n Phthorocortum, i n	phthoracizin phthorocort
- sulf-	presence of sulfur or its derivatives	Norsulfazĕlum, i n sulfas, ātis m	norsulfazol sulfate
- thi-	presence of sulfur atom in the names of thiosalts and thioacids	Thiopentĕlum, i n thiosulfas, ātis m	thiopental thiosulfate
- yl-	presence of carbohydrogenic radicals	Benzylopenicillĭnum, i n salicylicus, a, um	benzylopenicillin salicylic

§ 83. Exercises

1. Give the dictionary form of each word and translate into English:

Acidum arsenicosum anhydricum; Acidum ascorbinicum in dragées; Cyanocobalaminum seu Vitamimum B₁₂; Emplastrum Plumbi simplex; Emulsum Erythrophosphatidi in ampullis; Phthalazolium in tabulettis; Pulvis Magnesii oxydi; Sirupus Aloës cum Ferro; Sulfacylum solubile pro injectionibus; Suspendio Hydrocortisoni in flaconibus; Tabulettae Acidi folici; Tabulettae Acidi acetylsalicylici enterosolubiles.

2. Give the dictionary form of each word and translate into Latin:

ascorbic acid in dragees; coated tablets of glutaminic acid; clear hydrochloric acid; diluted solution of hydrogen peroxide; emulsion of castor oil; granules of furazolidon for children; powder of foxglove leaves; solution of nicotinic acid; solution of soluthizon for intratracheal injection; spirituous solution of iodine for internal use; suspension of aluminium hydroxide; tablets of lipoic acid; thioacetazon in tablets; white powder of sulfadimidine; yellow mercury oxide.

3. Give the dictionary form both of the nouns and the adjectives as well as standard verb forms indicating order or instruction in medical prescription, translate the medical prescriptions:

- | | | | |
|----------|--|----------|--|
| 1. Take: | Tablets of phthalazol 0,05
number 20
Give. Write on the label: | 2. Take: | Naphthalan ointment 50,0
Let it be given
Let it be labelled: |
| 3. Take: | Clear hydrochloric acid 6,0
Distilled water up to 100 ml
Let it be mixed
Let it be given
Let it be labelled: | 4. Take: | Purified sulfur
Peach oil of each 30,0
Let it be mixed
Let it be sterilized!
Let it be given
Let it be labelled: |
| 5. Take: | Streptocide
Sulfadimezine
Norsulfazol of each 5,0
Mix to make the finest powder
Let it be given
Let it be labelled: | 6. Take: | Glutaminic acid 1,5
Solution of glucose 25 %
— 450 ml
Mix
Give
Write on the label: |
| 7. Take: | Menthol 0,1
Zinc oxide
Boric acid of each 0,5
Vaseline 10,0
Mix to make an ointment
Give
Write on the label: | 8. Take: | Boric acid 5,0
Zinc oxide
Wheat starch of each 25,0
Ointment of naphthalan 45,0
Mix to make a paste
Give. Write on the label: |

- | | |
|---|---|
| <p>9. Take: Ascorbic acid 0,2
Nicotinic acid
Riboflavin of each 0,25
Distilled water up to 100 ml
Let it be mixed
Let it be given
Let it be labelled:</p> | <p>10. Take: Yellow mercury oxide 0,6
Ichthyol 0,8
Zinc ointment 20,0
Mix to make a paste
Give
Write on the label:</p> |
| <p>11. Take: Extract of belladonna 0,015
Powder of rhubarb root
Magnesium oxide of each 0,3
Mix to make a powder
Give such doses
in the amount 10
Write on the label:</p> | <p>12. Take: Salicylic acid
Lactic acid of each 6,0
Icy acetic acid 3,0
Collodium up to 20,0
Mix
Give
Write on the label:</p> |

§ 84. Vocabulary to lesson 11

I. Latin-English vocabulary

acetylsalicylicus, a, um	— acetylsalicylic
acídum, i n	— acid
Aloë, ës f	— aloe
anhydrícus, a, um	— anhydrous
arsenicōsus, a, um	— arsenous
ascorbinícus, a, um	— ascorbic
Cyanocobalamīnum, i n	— cyanocobalamin
dragée (plur. dragées)	— dragee (plur. dragees)
emplastrum, i n	— plaster
emulsum, i n	— emulsion
enterosolubīlis, e	— enteric soluble
Erythrophosphatīdum, i n	— erythrophosphatide
Ferrum, i n	— iron
flaco, ōnis m	— phial
folícus, a, um	— folic
Hydrocortisōnum, i n	— hydrocortisone
Magnesium, i n	— magnesium
Naphthalānum, i n	— naphthalan
Norsulfazōlum, i n	— norsulfazol
oxýdum, i n	— oxide
Phthalazōlum, i n	— phthalazol
Plumbum, i n	— lead
Riboflavīnum, i n	— riboflavin
Ricīnus, i m	— castor oil plant
seu	— or
simplex, ícis	— simple
solubīlis, e	— soluble
Streptocīdum, i n	— streptocide
Sulfacýlum, i n	— sulfacyl
Sulfur, ūris n	— sulfur
suspensio, ōnis f	— suspension
vitamīnum, i n	— vitamin

II. English-Latin vocabulary

acetic	— acetīcus, a um	menthol	— Menthōlum, i n
acid	— acīdum, i n	mercury	— Hydrargyrum, i n
aluminium	— Aluminium, i n	naphthalan	— Naphthalānum, i n
ascorbic	— ascorbinīcus, a, um	nicotinic	— nicotinīcus, a, um
boric	— borīcus, a, um	oxide	— oxŷdum, i n
castor oil	— Oleum Ricīni	paste	— pasta, ae f
castor oil plant	— Ricīnus, i m	peach	— Persīcum, i n
clear	— purus, a, um	peroxide	— peroxŷdum, i n
coated	— obductus, a, um	phthalazol	— Phthalazōlum, i n
collodium	— Collodium, i n	peach oil	— Oleum Persicōrum
diluted	— dilūtus, a, um	purified	— depurātus, a, um
distilled	— destillātus, a, um	rhubarb	— Rheum, i n
dragee	— dragée	riboflavin	— Riboflavīnum, i n
(plur. dragees)	(plur. dragées)	root	— radix, īcis f
drop	— gutta, ae f	salicylic	— salicylīcus, a, um
emulsion	— emulsum, i n	soluthizon	— Soluthizōnum, i n
finest	— subtilissīmus, a, um	spirituous	— spirituōsus, a, um
foxglove	— Digitālis, is f	starch	— Amŷlum, i n
furazolidon	— Furazolidōnum, i n	sulfadimezine	— Sulfadimezīnum, i n
glutaminic	— glutaminīcus, a, um	sulfadimidine	— Sulfadimidīnum, i n
glucose	— Glucōsum, i n	sulfur	— Sulfur, ūris n
hydrochloric	— hydrochlorīcus, a, um	suspension	— suspensio, ōnis f
hydrogen	— Hydrogenium, i n	thioacetazone	— Thioacetazōnum, i n
hydroxide	— hydroxŷdum, i n	up to	— ad (Acc.)
ichthyol	— Ichthyōlum, i n	use	— usus, us m
icy	— glaciālis, e	vaseline	— Vaselīnum, i n
internal	— internus, a, um	water	— aqua, ae f
intratracheal	— intratracheālis, e	wheat	— Triticum, i n
iodine	— Iōdum, i n	white	— albus, a, um
lactic	— lactīcus, a, um	yellow	— flavus, a, um
lipoic	— lipoīcus, a, um	zinc	— Zincum, i n

LESSON 12

LATIN NAMES OF SALTS IN THE LABELS OF DRUG NAMES AND IN MEDICAL PRESCRIPTIONS

§ 85. Latin names of salts, whose anions contain oxygen

Latin names of salts consist of two parts. First goes the Genitive case of a cation name (a chemical element name or, more seldom, a drug name), in the second place is the Nominative of an anion name. Anion names are always written with a small letter. If we speak of anions derivatives of acids containing oxygen of different degrees, two variants of these anions are distinguished:

1. The names of anions containing the greatest amount of oxygen are masculine nouns of the third declension with the final elements **-as** in the Nominative and **-ātis** in the Genitive singular: Na_2SO_4 — Natrii sulfas → sulfas, ātis m:

Chemical symbol of the salt	Latin name of the salt	The anion name and its dictionary form	English equivalent of the anion name	English equivalent of the salt name
Na ₂ SO ₄	Natrii sulfas	sulfas, ātis m	sulfate	sodium sulfate
NaNO ₃	Natrii nitras	nitras, ātis m	nitrate	sodium nitrate

So, one can very easily find out the correlation between English and Latin anion names of the first group: the English final element **-ate** corresponds to the Latin final element **-as**. In this way we may instantly determine Latin equivalents of English anion names without analyzing their chemical composition, including all the anions of organic acids having the final element **-ate** too:

sodium salicylate — Natrii salicylas

testosterone propionate — Testosterōni propiōnas.

2. The names of anions containing lesser amount of oxygen are masculine nouns of the third declension with the final elements **-is** in the Nominative and **-itis** in the Genitive singular: Na₂SO₃ — Natrii sulfis → sulfis, ītis m:

Chemical symbol of the salt	Latin name of the salt	The anion name and its dictionary form	English equivalent of the anion name	English equivalent of the salt name
Na ₂ SO ₃	Natrii sulfis	sulfis, ītis m	sulfite	sodium sulfite
NaNO ₂	Natrii nitris	nitris, ītis m	nitrite	sodium nitrite

As you can see, the final element **-is** in Latin anion name corresponds to the English final element **-ite**, and it allows, as it is seen above, to determine any necessary equivalent taking as well into consideration the spelling of each separate word.

§ 86. Latin names of salts whose anions don't contain oxygen

The names of anions which don't contain oxygen are neutral nouns of the second declension with the suffix **-īd-** and the ending **-um**:

Chemical symbol of the salt	Latin name of the salt	The anion name and its dictionary form	English equivalent of the anion name	English equivalent of the salt name
Na ₂ S	Natrii sulfidum	sulfidum, i n	sulfide	sodium sulfide
NaCl	Natrii chlorīdum	chlorīdum, i n	chloride	sodium chloride

So, the final element **-īdum** of the Latin anion names which don't contain oxygen corresponds to the English final element **-ide** in the anion names with the similar chemical compound.

Conclusion: if you remember the final elements of the three seen above variants of Latin anion names and if you know which Latin anion name final element corresponds to the English one, you do not need to know the chemical compound of any salt to express correctly both English and Latin salt name.

§ 87. Anion names of basic salts

Latin anion names of basic salts are formed by adding the prefix **sub-** to the anion names:

Bismūthi subnītras — basic nitrate of bismuth

Aluminii subacētas — basic acetate of aluminium.

§ 88. Two-component names of potassium and sodium salts

Two-component Latin names of potassium and sodium salts are written with a hyphen. Each component of such a name is a neutral noun of the second declension. The second component following the hyphen is written with a small letter. In the dictionary form, after the two-component Nominative case the ending **-i** and the gender sign **n** follow. English equivalents of these terms are written without a hyphen:

Sulfacylum-natrium, i n — sulfacyl sodium

Benzylpenicillinum-kalium, i n — benzylpenicillin potassium.

§ 89. Morphological roots reflecting pharmaceutical information

Morphological roots	Meaning	Latin examples	English equivalents
-aeth-	presence of ethyl group	aethylīcus, a, um Aethynālum, i n	ethylic ethynal
-lysin-, -lytin-	removing some destructive factor	Phytolysīnum, i n Broncholytīnum, i n	phytolysin broncholytin
-meth-	presence of methyl group	Methylēnum, i n Methylium, i n	methylene methyl
-morph-	analgetics, derivatives of morphine	Apomorphīnum, i n Morpholongum, i n	apomorphine morpholong
-phen-	presence of phenyl group	Phenōlum, i n Phthorophenazīnum, i n	phenol phthorophenazin
-phthi-	antitubercular effect	Phthivazīdum, i n Phthizopyrāmum, i n	ftivazide phthizopyram
-poly-	large number, multitude	polyvitaminōsus, a, um Polyamīnum, i n	multivitaminous polyamin
-thromb-	thrombolytics, against thrombosis	Thrombīnum, i n Thrombocytīnum, i n	thrombin thrombocytin

§ 90. Exercises

1. Give the dictionary form of each word, translate from Latin into English:

Aether stabilisātus pro narcōsi; Barii sulfas pro rentgēno; Cerebrolysīnum in ampullis ad usum parenterālem; Emulsum Benzylīi benzoātis medicinālis; Granūla Aethazōli-natrii pro infantibus; Membranūlae ophthalmīcae cum Atropīni sulfāte; Methylēnum coeruleum in capsūlis; Phenylīi salicylas in tabulettis; Pulvis Phenoxymethylpenicillīni pro suspensiōne; Solutio Aethacidīni lactātis spirituōsa; Species polyvitaminōsae et pectorāles; Tabulettae Calcii orotātis; Theobromīnum-natrium cum Natrii salicylāte; Spirītus aethylīcus rectificātus; Vitamīnum B₆ seu Pyridoxīni hydrochlorīdum.

2. Give the dictionary form of each word, translate from English into Latin:

basic acetate of lead; basic nitrate of bismuth with belladonna extract; coated tablets of tetracycline hydrochloride; hypertonic solution of sodium chloride; isotonic solution of sodium chloride; morpholone for intramuscular injections; ointment of copper citrate; ophthalmic films with fibrinolysin; polyethylenoxide for intravenous use; powder of sarcosyl for solution; precipitated calcium carbonate; rectified ethylic spirit; solution of terrilytin for inhalation; suppositories of methyluracil; syrup of broncholytin in phials; tablets of ethylmorphine hydrochloride for adults; tablets of ftivazide.

3. Give the dictionary form of the nouns and adjectives as well as standard verb forms indicating order or instruction in medical prescription; translate the medical prescriptions:

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Take: Tincture of spring pheasant's eye herb 180 ml
Amidopyrin 2,0
Sodium bromide 4,0
Codeine phosphate 0,2
Mix
Give
Write on the label: | 2. Take: Extract of belladonna 0,001
Basic bismuth nitrate
Phenyl salicylate of each 0,25
Mix to make a powder
Give such doses in the amount 10
Write on the label: |
| 3. Take: Ethylmorphine hydrochloride 0,1
Vaseline 10,0
Mix to make an ointment
Give
Write on the label: | 4. Take: Rectified ethylic spirit 95 %
— 20 ml
Water for injections 100 ml
Let it be mixed
Let it be given
Let it be labelled: |
| 5. Take: Platyphylline hydrotartrate 0,005
Phenobarbital
Papaverine hydrochloride of each 0,02
Give such doses in the amount 10
Write on the label: | 6. Take: Dimedrol 0,01
Ephedrine hydrochloride 0,1
Peach oil 10 ml
Mint oil I drop
Mix
Give. Write on the label: |
| 7. Take: Coated tablets of oleandoandomycin phosphate 0,125 number 25
Let it be given
Let it be labelled: | 8. Take: Ophthalmic films with neomycin sulfate number 10
Let it be given
Let it be labelled: |
| 9. Take: Morphine hydrochloride 0,01
Apomorphine hydrochloride 0,05
Diluted hydrochloric acid 1ml
Distilled water up to 200 ml
Let it be mixed
Let it be given
Let it be labelled: | 10. Take: Magnesium carbonate 4,0
Potassium carbonate 5,0
Sodium hydrocarbonate 1,0
Glycerin in sufficient amount
Mix to make a paste
Give
Write on the label: |

11. Take: Menthol
Ethylmorphine hydrochloride
of each 200 ml
Sugar 0,03
Mix to make a powder
Give such doses in the amount 10
Write on the label:

12. Take: Tincture of althea root 180 ml
Sodium hydrocarbonate
Sodium benzoate of each 5,0
Simple syrup 20,0
Mix. Give
Write on the label:

§ 91. Vocabulary to lesson 12

I. Latin-English vocabulary

Aethacridīnum, i n	— ethacridine
Aethazōlum-natrium, i n	— ethazol sodium
aether, ěris m	— ether
aethylīcus, a, um	— ethylic
Althaea, ae f	— althea
Apomorphīnum, i n	— apomorphine
Atropīnum, i n	— atropin
benzoas, ātis m	— benzoate
Benzylum, i n	— benzyl
Calcium, i n	— calcium
Cerebrolysīnum, i n	— cerebrolysin
coeruleus, a, um	— blue
hydrochlorīdum, i n	— hydrochloride
lactas, ātis m	— lactate
medicinālis, e	— medical
membfanūla, ae f	— film (ophthalmic)
Methylēnum, i n	— methylene
narcōsis, is f	— narcosis
orōtas, ātis m	— orotate
parenterālis, e	— parenteral
pectorālis, e	— pectoral
Phenoxymethylpenicillīnum, i n	— phenoxymethylpenicillin
Phenylum, i n	— phenyl
polyvitaminōsus, a, um	— multivitaminous
Pyridoxīnum i n	— pyridoxine
rectificātus, a, um	— rectified (about liquid substances)
rentgēnum, i n	— roentgenoscopy
salicylas, ātis m	— salicylate
seu	— or
spirituōsus, a, um	— spirituous
spirītus, us m	— spirit
sulfas, ātis m	— sulfate
suspensio, ōnis f	— suspension
stabilisātus, a, um	— stabilized
Theobromīnum-natrium, i n	— theobromine sodium
usus, us m	— use
vitamīnum, i n	— vitamin

II. English-Latin vocabulary

acid	— acīdum, i n
Adonis (= pheasant's eye)	— Adōnis, īdis m, f
amidopyrin	— Amidopyrīnum, i n
apomorphine	— Apomorphīnum, i n
basic acetate	— subacētas, ātis m
basic nitrate	— subnītras, ātis m
belladonna	— Belladonna, ae f
benzoate	— benzoas, ātis m
bismuth	— Bismūthum, i n
bromide	— bromīdum, i n
broncholytin	— Broncholytīnum, i n
calcium	— Calcium, i n
carbonate	— carbōnas, ātis m
chloride	— chlorīdum, i n
citrate	— citras, ātis m
codeine	— Codeīnum, i n
copper	— Cuprum, i n
diluted	— dilūtus, a, um
dimedrol	— Dimedrōlum, i n
distilled	— destillatus, a, um
drop	— gutta, ae f
ephedrine	— Ephedrīnum, i n
ethylmorphine	— Aethylmorphīnum, i n
fibrinolysin	— Fibrinolysīnum, i n
film (ophthalmic)	— lamella, ae f; membranūla, ae f
glycerin	— Glycerīnum, i n
hydrocarbonate	— hydrocarbōnas, ātis m
hydrochloric	— hydrochlorīcus, a, um
hydrochloride	— hydrochlorīdum, i n
hydrotartrate	— hydrotartras, ātis m
hypertonic	— hypertonīcus, a, um
inhalation	— inhalatio, ōnis f
in sufficient amount	— quantum satis
intramuscular	— intramusculāris, e
intravenous	— intravenōsus, a, um
isotonic	— isotonīcus, a, um
lead	— Plumbum, i n
magnesium	— Magnesium, i n
menthol	— Menthōlum, i n
methyluracil	— Methyluracīlum, i n
mint	— Mentha, ae f
morphine	— Morphīnum, i n
morpholong	— Morpholongum, i n
neomycin	— Neomycīnum, i n
number	— numērus, i m
oleandomycin	— Oleandomycīnum, i n
papaverine	— Papaverīnum, i n
paste	— pasta, ae f
peach	— Persīcum, i n

peach oil	— Oleum Persicōrum
phenobarbital	— Phenobarbitālum, i n
phenyl	— Phenylum, i n
phosphate	— phosphas, ātis m
ftivazide	— Phthivazīdum, i n
platyphylline	— Platyphyllīnum, i n
polyethylenoxide	— Polyaethylenoxīdum, i n
potassium	— Kalium, i n
precipitated	— praecipitātus, a, um
rectified	— rectificātus, a, um (about liquid substances)
salicylate	— salicȳlas, ātis m
sarcolysin	— Sarcolysīnum, i n
simple	— simplex, ĩcis
sodium	— Natrium, i n
spirit	— spirītus, us m
spring	— vernālis, e
sugar	— Sacchārum, i n
sulfate	— sulfas, ātis m
syrup	— sirūpus, i m
terrilytin	— Terrilytīnum, i n
use	— usus, us m
vaseline	— Vaselīnum, i n
water	— aqua, ae f

§ 92. Model (sample) of the final test on pharmaceutical terminology

1. Write down the dictionary form of each word and translate the terms into Latin:

1) basic bismuth nitrate 2) peach oil 3) rectified ethylic spirit 4) ether for narcosis 5) ascorbic acid in tablets 6) liquid extract of hawthorn

2. Write down the dictionary forms of the nouns and adjectives as well as standard verb forms indicating order or instruction in medical prescription and translate the following prescriptions into Latin:

Take: Ethylmorphine hydrochloride 0,1	Take: Oily solution of nitroglycerin
Vaseline 10,0	1 % — 0,0005
Mix to make an ointment	Let such doses be given in the
Give. Write on the label:	amount 20 in capsules
	Let it be labeled:

Take: Soluble streptocide 5,0
Solution of glucose 10 % — 100 ml
Mix. Let it be sterilized!
Give. Write on the label:

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

A

acetylsalicylicus, a, um acetylsalicylic
acidum, i n acid
ad (Acc.) 1) for 2) up to (in prescriptions)
adultus, a, um adult
Aethacridinum, i n ethacridine
Aethazolium-natrium, i n ethazol sodium
aether, ěris m ether
aethylicus, a, um ethylic
Aloë, ěs f aloe
Althaea, ae f althea
amount numěrus, i m
ampulla, ae f ampoule
Anaesthesolum, i n anaesthesol
anhydrĭcus, a, um anhydrous
Apomorphĭnum, i n apomorphine
arsenicōsus, a, um arsenous
ascorbinĭcus, a, um ascorbic
Aspirĭnum, i n aspirin
Atropĭnum, i n atropin

B

Barium, i n barium
benzoas, ātis m benzoate
Benzylum, i n benzyl

C

Calcium, i n calcium
capsūla, ae f capsule
Cerebrolysĭnum, i n cerebrolysin
coeruleus, a, um blue
Corglycōnum, i n corglycon
crystallisātus, a, um crystal
cum (Abl.) with
Cyanocobalamĭnum, i n cyanocobalamin

D

depurātus, a, um purified
Dibiomycĭnum, i n dibiomycine
Dicaĭnum, i n dicain
dosis, is f dose
dragée (plur. dragées) dragee
(plur. dragees)

E

emplastrum, i n plaster
emulsum, i n emulsion
enterosolubĭlis, e enteric soluble
Erycyclĭnum, i n erycyclin
Erythrophosphatĭdum, i n erythro-
phosphatide
et and
Eucalyptus, i f eucalyptus
Euphyllĭnum, i n euphylline
ex (Abl.) from, of
extractum, i n extract

F

Ferrum, i n iron
flaco, ōnis m phial
fluĭdus, a, um liquid
folĭcus, a, um folic
folium, i n leaf
fructus, us m fruit

G

Glucōsum, i n glucose
Glycyrāmum, i n glycyram
granūlum, i n granule

H

haemostatĭcus, a, um haemostatic
Helianthus, i m sunflower
hydrochlorĭdum, i n hydrochloride
Hydrocortisōnum, i n hydrocortisone

I

in (Abl.) in
infans, ntis m, f child
infantes, ium m, f children
infusio, ōnis f infusion
injectio, ōnis f injection
intravenōsus, a, um intravenous

L

lactas, ātis m lactate
lamella, ae f film (ophthalmic)
Leonūrus, i m motherwort
linimentum, i n liniment

M

Magnesium, i n magnesium
medicinālis, e medical
membranūla, ae f film (ophthalmic)
Methylēnum, i n methylene

N

Naphthalānum, i n naphthalan
narcōsis, is f narcosis
Natrium, i n sodium
Norsulfazōlum, i n norsulfazol

O

obductus, a, um coated
Oestradiōlum, i n oestradiol
of each ana
oleum, i n oil
ophthalmīcus, a, um ophthalmic
orōtas, ātis m orotate
oxŷdum, i n oxide

P

parenterālis, e parenteral
pectorālis, e pectoral
Phenoxymethylpenicillīnum, i n
phenoxymethylpenicillin
Phenylum, i n phenyl
Phthalazōlum, i n phthalazol
Phytīnum, i n phytin
Phytomenadiōnum, i n phytomenadion
Plumbum, i n lead
polyvitaminōsus, a, um multivita-
minous
pro (Abl.) for
pulvis, ěris m powder
Pyridoxīnum, i n pyridoxine
Pyromecaīnum, i n pyromecain

Q

quantum satis in sufficient amount
Quercus, us f oak

R

radix, ĩcis f root
rectificātus, a, um rectified (about liquid
substances)
rentgēnum, i n roentgenoscopy
rhizōma, ātis n rhizome

Riboflavīnum, i n riboflavin
Ricīnus, i m castor oil plant
Rifathyroīnum, i n rifathyroin
Rosa, ae f dog-rose, wild rose

S

salicŷlas, ātis m salicylate
seu or
simplex, ĩcis simple
sirŷpus, i m syrup
solubīlis, e soluble
solutio, ōnis f solution
species, ěrum f (plur.) species
spirituōsus, a, um spirituous
spirītus, us m spirit
spongia, ae f sponge
stabilisātus, a, um stabilized
Streptocīdum, i n streptocide
Sulfacŷlum, i n sulfacyl
sulfas, ātis m sulfate
Sulfur, ŷris n sulfur
suppositorium, i n suppository
suspensio, ōnis f suspension
Synthomycīnum, i n synthomycin

T

tabuletta, ae f tablet
Testosterōnum, i n testosterone
Theobromīnum-natrium, i n
theobromine sodium
Theophedrīnum, i n theophedrin
Theophyllīnum, i n theophyllin
Thymalīnum, i n thymalin
Thyreoidīnum, i n thyreoidin
tinctŷra, ae f tincture

U

unguentum, i n ointment
usus, us m use

V

vaginālis, e vaginal
Valeriāna, ae f valerian
vitamīnum, i n vitamin
vitreus, a, um vitreous
vitrum, i n glass

ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY

A

acetic acetīcus, a, um
acid acīdum, i n
adonis (= **pheasant's eye**) Adōnis, īdis m, f
adult adultus, a, um; adultus, i m
aerosol aērosōlum, i n
ethylmorphine Aethylmorphīnum, i n
alcohol Allochōlum, i n («Allochōlum»)
althea Althaea, ae f
aluminium Aluminium, i n
amidopyrin Amidopyrīnum, i n
amount numērus, i m
ampoule ampulla, ae f
anaesthesin Anaesthesīnum, i n
antiasthmatic antiasthmaticus, a, um
antipyrin Antipyrīnum, i n
apomorphine Apomorphīnum, i n
ascorbic ascorbinīcus, a, um

B

bark cortex, īcis m
basic acetate subacētas, ātis m
basic nitrate subnītras, ātis m
belladonna Belladonna, ae f
benzoate benzoas, ātis m
bismuth Bismūthum, i n
boric borīcus, a, um
bromide bromīdum, i n
broncholytin Broncholytīnum, i n

C

calcium Calcium, i n
camphomen Camphomēnum, i n («Camphomēnum»)
camphoric camphorātus, a, um
capsule capsūla, ae f
carbonate carbōnas, ātis m
castor oil Oleum Ricīni
castor oil plant Ricīnus, i m
children infantes, ium m, f
chloride chlorīdum, i n
chloroform Chloroformium, i n
citrate citras, ātis m
clear purus, a, um
coated obductus, a, um
cocoa Cacāo (without a dictionary form)
codeine Codeīnum, i n

collagenic collagenīcus, a, um
collodium Collodium, i n
compound composītus, a, um
copper Cuprum, i n
cortex cortex, īcis m

D

decoction decoctum, i n
diluted dilūtus, a, um
dimedrol Dimedrōlum, i n
distilled destillātus, a, um
dose dosis, is f
dragee (**plur. dragees**) dragée (plur. dragées)
drop gutta, ae f
dry siccus, a, um

E

emulsion emulsum, i n
ephatin Ephatīnum, i n («Ephatīnum»)
ephedrine Ephedrīnum, i n
eryhaem Eryhaemum, i n
erynit Erynītum, i n
erythromycin Erythromycīnum, i n
ether aether, ěris m
ethylic aethylīcus, a, um
ethylmorphine Aethylmorphīnum, i n
eucalyptus Eucalyptus, i f
extract extractum, i n

F

feracryl Feracrȳlum, i n («Feracrȳlum»)
fibrinolysin Fibrinolysīnum, i n
film lamella, ae f; membranūla, ae f
finest subtilissīmus, a, um
flax Linum, i n
flower flos, floris m
for pro (Abl.)
foxglove Digitālis, is f
ftivazide Phthivazīdum, i n
furazolidon Furazolidōnum, i n

G

glass vitrum, i n
glucose Glucōsum, i n
glutaminic glutaminīcus, a, um
glyceric glycerinōsus, a, um
glycerin Glycerīnum, i n
glycin Glycīnum, i n
granule granūlum, i n

H

haemophobin Haemophobīnum, i n
haemostatic haemostatīcus, a, um
hawthorn Crataegus, i f
herb herba, ae f
hydrocarbonate hydrocarbōnas, ātis m
hydrochloric hydrochlorīcus, a, um
hydrochloride hydrochlorīdum, i n
hydrogen Hydrogenium, i n
hydrotartrate hydrotartras, ātis m
hydroxide hydroxŷdum, i n
hypertonic hypertonīcus, a, um

I

ichthyol Ichthyōlum, i n
icy glaciālis, e
in in (Abl.)
inhalation inhalatio, ōnis f
injection injectio, ōnis f
in sufficient amount quantum satis
internal internus, a, um
intramuscular intramusculāris, e
intranasal intranasālis, e
intratracheal intratracheālis, e
intravenous intravenōsus, a, um
introduction introductio, ōnis f
iodine Iōdum, i n
isotonic isotonīcus, a, um

L

lactic lactīcus, a, um
lead Plumbum, i n
leaf folium, i n
licorice Glycyrrhīza, ae f
lily of the valley Convallaria, ae f
liniment linimentum, i n
lipoic lipoīcus, a, um
liquid fluīdus, a, um

M

magnesium Magnesium, i n
matricary Chamomilla, ae f
medicinal medicinālis, e
menthol Menthōlum, i n
mercury Hydrargŷrum, i n
methyluracil Methyluracīlum, i n
mint Mentha, ae f
morphine Morphīnum, i n
morpholong Morpholongum, i n
mycoseptin Mycoseptīnum, i n

N

naphthalan Naphthalānum, i n
narcosis narcōsis, is f
neomycin Neomycīnum, i n
nicotinic nicotinīcus, a, um
nitroglycerin Nitroglycerīnum, i n
norsulfazol Norsulfazōlum, i n
number numērus, i m

O

oak Quercus, us f
oestradiol Oestradiōlum, i n
of each ana
oil oleum, i n
oily oleōsus, a, um
ointment unguentum, i n
oleandomycin Oleandomycīnum, i n
ophthalmic ophthalmīcus, a, um
oxide oxŷdum, i n

P

packet fascis, is m
papaverine Papaverīnum, i n
paste pasta, ae f
peach Persīcum, i n
peach oil Oleum Persicōrum
pectoral pectorālis, e
pepper piperītus, a, um
peroxide peroxydum, i n
phenobarbital Phenobarbitālum, i n
phenyl Phenylum, i n
phial flaco, ōnis m
phosphate phosphas, ātis m
phthalazol Phthalazōlum, i n
phytomenadion Phytomenadiōnum, i n
plaster emplasrum, i n
plastic polyaethylenīcus, a, um
platyphyllin Platyphyllinīnum, i n
polyethylenoxid Polyaethylenoxīdum, i n
potassium Kalium, i n
powder pulvis, ěris m
precipitated praecipitātus, a, um
pregoestrol Praegoestrōlum, i n
purified depurātus, a, um

R

rectified rectificātus, a, um (about liquid substances)
rectal rectālis, e
rhizome rhizōma, ātis n

rhubarb Rheum, i n
riboflavin Riboflavīnum, i n
root radix, īcis f

S

salicylate salicylas, ātis m
salicylic salicylicus, a, um
sarcolysin Sarcolysinum, i n
seed semen, īnis n
simple simplex, īcis
sodium Natrium, i n
soluble solubilis, e
soluthizon Soluthizonum, i n
solution solutio, ōnis f
species species, ērum f (only plur.)
spirit (alcohol) spiritus, us m
spirituous spirituosus, a, um
sponge spongia, ae f
spring vernālis, e
strophanthus Strophanthus, i m
starch Amylum, i n
streptocide Streptocidum, i n
strophanthin Strophanthinum, i n
strophanthus Strophanthus, i m
sublingual sublingualis, e
such talis, e
sugar Saccharum, i n
sulfadimezine Sulfadimezinum, i n
sulfadimidine Sulfadimidinum, i n
sulfate sulfas, atis m
sulfur Sulfur, ūris n
sunflower Helianthus, i m
suppository suppositorium, i n
suspension suspensio, ōnis f

synoestrol Synoestrolum, i n
synthomycin Synthomycinum, i n
syrup sirūpus, i m

T

tablet tabuletta, ae f
tea thea, ae f
terrilytin Terrilytinum, i n
tertracyclin Tetracyclinum, i n
testoenat Testoenatum, i n
theophyllin Theophyllinum, i n
thioacetazone Thioacetazonum, i n
thymogen Thymogenum, i n
tincture tinctura, ae f
trituration trituration, ōnis f

U

up to ad (Acc.)
use usus, us m

V

vaginal vaginalis, e
valerian Valeriana, ae f
vaseline Vaselineum, i n
vitreous vitreus, a, um

W

water aqua, ae f
wheat Triticum, i n
white albus, a, um
with cum (Abl.)

Y

yellow flavus, a, um

Z

zinc Zincum, i n

PART IV. CLINICAL TERMINOLOGY

LESSON 13

INTRODUCTION TO THE LATIN CLINICAL TERMINOLOGY. ONE-WORD TERMS AND THEIR MORPHOLOGICAL STRUCTURE. INITIAL AND FINAL MORPHOLOGICAL ELEMENTS USED FOR WORD BUILDING. MULTIWORD CLINICAL TERMS. NAMES OF BRANCHES OF MEDICINE AND MEDICAL SPECIALISTS. NAMES OF MEDICAL EXAMINATIONS

§ 93. General remarks on the Latin clinical terminology

Clinical names are the most numerous among all medical terms, as these names signify the huge amount of different diseases, pathological conditions and abnormalities, medical examinations and operations. This terminology also includes a great amount of paramedical vocabulary. It is estimated that about 50 % English medical terms is of Greek origin, but this relation is particularly marked in clinical terms.

The word **clinical** itself is of Greek origin (*klinike* means *bed*) and it is the acknowledgement of the outstanding role of Greek physicians in both theoretical and practical medicine. Thanks to Greek physicians many diseases got their names and via Latin became part of European medical languages. New clinical names coming into use were built, as a rule, on the base of Greek vocabulary and Greek morphological elements. The grammar form of new clinical terms corresponds to the norms of Latin or other European languages. This historical tradition, in particular, is strictly followed in English. For example:

Latin	English	Meaning
adenītis	adenitis	inflammation of a gland
cardiopathia	cardiopathy	disease of the heart
osteōma	osteoma	tumour made up of bone tissue

It is indisputable, that clinical terms composed on the base of Greek morphological elements have a very important advantage: they are short, but may stand in for a large clinical definition. That's why they are the priority choice of the physicians all over the world, and every one who has a M. D. must know the rules of word building of medical terms and to learn lexical and morphological word building elements.

§ 94. The morphological structure of one-word clinical terms

From the point of view of their morphological structure, one-word clinical terms can be 1) simple, containing only one stem and 2) compound, consisting of two or more morphological elements.

About 15 % clinical names belong to the first group, e. g. *asthma*, *ātis* n — *asthma*; *cancer*, *cri* m — *cancer*; *herpes*, *ētis* m — *herpes*; *ulcus*, *ēris* n — *ulcer*. These noun-terms are mostly used in combination with adjectives or nouns: *asthma bronchiāle* — *bronchial asthma*; *ulcus gastris* — *ulcer of the stomach*.

The majority of one-word clinical terms consist of two or more morphological elements. These elements can be expressed by:

1. Greek affixes (prefixes, suffixes) and roots of nouns or adjectives. In this case, the name can contain:

1.1. A prefix, a root, a suffix and a final element (mostly *-ia*, *-ēma*, *-ismus*, *-ītis*, *-ōma*, *-ōsis*):

parametrītis, īdis f — parametritis, tissue inflammation near uterus. The name includes: a) the prefix **para-** (near) b) the root **metr-** (uterus) c) the suffix **-ītis** (strictly speaking — combination of suffix **-it-** and ending **-is**) with the constant meaning of «inflammation»;

1.2. A prefix, one or more roots and a final element:

atrichia, ae f — atrichia, lack of hair. The name includes: a) the prefix **a-** (absence, lack, cessation of a function) b) the root **trich-** (hair) c) the final element **-ia**;

hypermetropia, ae f — hypermetropia, long-sightedness. The name includes: a) the prefix **hyper-** (excess function) b) the root **metr-** (dimension) c) the final root **-opia** (sight);

1.3. A root and a suffix (suffixed ending):

chondrōma, ātis n — chondroma, tumour of cartilaginous tissue. The name includes: a) the root **chondr-** (cartilage) b) the suffix **-ōma** with the meaning «tumour (= tumor)».

2. The initial and final word building roots in combination with the term final elements **-ia**, **-ēma**, **-ismus**, **-ītis**, **-ōma**, **-ōsis**, **-us**. If the initial word building root hereby ends up with a consonant and the final one begins with a consonant too, these roots are joined via a connecting vowel **-o-**:

rhinopathia, ae f — rhinopathy, disease of the nose. The name includes: 1) the root **rhin-** (nose) 2) the connecting vowel **-o-** 3) the root **path-** (disease);

otorhinolaryngolōgus, i m — otorhinolaryngologist, the doctor for treating ear, nose and larynx diseases. The name includes: a) the root **ot-** (ear) b) the root **rhin-** (nose) c) the root **laryng-** (larynx) d) the final root **-logus** (specialist in a medical region).

If the first root ends with a vowel, the connecting vowel **-o-** is usually omitted:

pelvimetria, ae f — pelvimetry, measuring of pelvis dimension in women;

tachycardia, ae f — tachycardia, abnormally fast heart rate.

If the second root begins with a vowel, the connecting vowel **-o-** as a rule is omitted too:

haemat + uria → **haematuria, ae f** — haematuria, blood in the urine;

odont + algia → **odontalgia, ae f** — odontalgia, toothache, feeling of pain in the tooth.

Some exceptions to this rule are nevertheless found: e. g. the roots **broncho-** and **bronchi-** never lose their final vowels: **bronchiectasia, ae f** (= **bronchoectasia**) — bronchiectasis, expansion of the bronchi; **bronchoadenītis**,

itidis f — bronchoadenitis, inflammation of bronchial lymphatic glands. The root **bi-** is always used with the connecting vowel **-o-**: biocycle, biology, microbiology, biopharmaceutics.

§ 95. Some notes on the word stressing in clinical names

In the compound nouns with the ending **-ia** the last but one vowel «**i**» is, as a rule, stressed contrary to the rule «vowel before vowel is short»: atrichía, bronchiectasía, haematuría, hypermetropía, odontalgía, rhinopathía. The noun **anatómia** (anatomy) and nouns with the final element **-logia** keep the third syllable from the end stressed: cardiología (cardiology), stomatología (stomatology).

§ 96. Initial and final root elements

Initial root elements are combined in a one-word term, as you could see above, with the final roots via the connecting vowel **-o-** or with the final suffixes. These roots are presented in the table of each lesson in the following consequence: 1) the Greek root 2) its Latin equivalent in the dictionary form 3) English meaning 4) English clinical word element:

haem-, haemat-	sanguis, ĩnis m	blood, condition of blood	haem-, haemat-
-----------------------	------------------------	----------------------------------	-----------------------

Initial roots can have two or more variants: ger-, geront- (old men or old age); haem-, haemat- (blood). All these variants are to be learnt by heart.

Final root elements are not as numerous as initial ones, but their word building capacity is very high. One should also remember that the final root or suffixed word building element is the first in the making up the literal translation of the term, for example:

The term **nephrographia, ae f** consists of the initial root **nephr-** (kidney) and the final root **-graphia** (X-ray examination), so the literal translation is «X-ray examination of the kidney», nephrography.

The term **myōma, ātis n** consists of the initial root **my-** (muscle) and the final element **-oma** (tumour), so the literal translation is «tumour of muscular tissue», myoma.

Final root elements can be part of an adjective too, e. g.: **-gēnus, a, um** in the term **biogēnus, a, um** — biogenic, caused by a vital organism.

The final roots are presented at each lesson in the table like that:

-logus — a specialist in a branch of science or medicine;

-iāter — a doctor, specialist in a branch of clinical medicine.

Some roots may be both initial and final. As final roots they have common endings, mostly the ending **-ia**. For example: **odont-** as the initial root and **-odontia** as the final one: **odontolīthus, i m** — odontolith, calculus on the teeth and **orthodontia, ae f** — orthodontics, the part of dental surgery which is concerned with the prevention and correction of the malocclusion of teeth.

§ 97. The structure and vocabulary of multiword clinical terms

Any multiword term consists, as a rule, of two or three words. The noun containing the cardinal information of the term is placed first, and then one or two nouns or one or two adjectives follow. The second and third nouns indicate the localization of the diseased organ or tissue; adjectives give qualitative and quantitative characteristics of the morbid condition:

infarctus cerēbri — cerebral infarct, an infarct of cerebral tissue due to failure of blood supply resulting from vascular thrombosis, embolism or spasm;

neuralgia nervi trigemīni — trigeminal neuralgia, neuralgic pain located in various portions of the head — in the distributions of one or more of the sensory divisions of the 5-th cranial nerve;

anaemia haemorrhagīca — haemorrhagic an(a)emia, an(a)emia caused by acute or chronic loss of blood because of whatever cause;

stomatītis apthōsa chronīca — chronic aphthous stomatitis, inflammation of the mucous membrane of the mouth, accompanied by small vesicles occurring on the mucous membrane of the cheeks and lips and rupturing to painful ulcers.

The combination of a noun and an adjective after the first noun of the term can be present too:

Atrophia faciēi progrediens — progressive facial atrophy, a condition in which there is a progressive wasting of the skin of the face;

Status praecancerōsus cutis faciēi — precancerous state of the face skin.

To sum up, we can say that multiword clinical terms are built similar to anatomical ones. First of all, the dictionary form of every word should be given. After that, the term is built according to the already known rules.

§ 98. The names of the common branches of clinical medicine

The names of common branches of clinical medicine are usually formed by means of the final root element **-logia** and the appropriate initial one, which determines the cardinal sense of the term. It should be mentioned that the most numerous names of medico-biological sciences are built according to this rule:

ophthalm- (eye) + -logia → **ophthalmologia, ae f** — ophthalmology, branch of clinical medicine treating eye diseases;

proct- (rectum) + -logia → **proctologia, ae f** — proctology, branch of clinical medicine treating rectum diseases. Compare also:

immunologia, ae f — immunology, science about immunity;

pharmacologia, ae f — pharmacology, science studying drugs and their usage;

physiologia, ae f — physiology, science about normal vital processes in human organism.

Names of some branches of clinical medicine are built by adding the root **-path-** (disease) and the final root **-logia** to the initial root:

neur- (nerve) + -path- + -logia → **neuropathologia, ae f** — neuropathology, clinical neurology, branch of clinical medicine meant for treating nerve diseases;

sex- (sex) + -path- + -logia → **sexopathologia, ae f** — sexopathology, branch of medicine meant to heal sexual disorders.

Some names of medical branches are formed by means of the final root element **-iatria**, which means some definite branches of clinical medicine:

geriatria, ae f — geriatrics, particular branch of medicine treating diseases of old age;

paediatrica, ae f — paediatrics, branch of medicine treating children's diseases;

phoniatria, ae f — phoniatics, branch of medicine treating disorders of voice formation;

phthisiatria, ae f — phthisiology, branch of medicine treating tuberculosis;

psychiatria, ae f — psychiatrics (psychiatry), branch of medicine treating mental diseases.

§ 99. The names of medical specialists

Most medical specialist's names are composed of the final root element **-logus** and the appropriate initial root element which determines the cardinal sense of the term. In this way names of most biological and medical specialists are formed:

anthropolōgus, i m — anthropologist, a specialist studying the man in the process of his evolution;

stomatolōgus, i m — dentist, a doctor-specialist treating diseases of the oral cavity;

diaetolōgus, i m — dietitian, a doctor-specialist in the dietary nutrition;

haematolōgus, i m — haematologist, a doctor-specialist in blood diseases.

If the name of a branch of medicine has the final element **-pathologia**, then the name of specialist has the final element **-patholōgus**:

neuropathologia → **neuropatholōgus, i m** — neuropathologist, a doctor-specialist in nerve diseases;

sexopathologia → **sexopatholōgus, i m** — sexopathologist, a doctor-specialist treating sexual disorders.

If the name of a branch of medicine has the final element **-iatria**, then the name of specialist has the final element **-iāter**:

paediatrica → **paediāter, tri m** — paediatrician (=paediatrist), a doctor-specialist in children's diseases.

Finally, many Latin names of medical specialists are built by means of the final element **-ista** and the initial root element:

oculista, ae m — oculist, a doctor-specialist treating eye diseases;

therapeutista, ae m — physician, therapist (therapist), a doctor-specialist treating inner organs.

§ 100. Some notes on the names of medical specialists in Latin and English

Names of medical specialists in Latin don't fully coincide with the English equivalents, as seen above. The difference lies not only on the morphological level (phthysiāter, tri m — phthysiologist), — sometimes, the lexical units don't correspond each other. For example, the name **otorhinolaryngologist** is not quite common for English or American medical use; instead three separate terms are used: otologist, rhinologist and laryngologist. But, the term **otolaryngologist** exists too. That's why it's more convenient to use this slightly artificial, but formally correct term **otorhinolaryngologist**, than to bring three English terms as equivalents. And otherwise, we tend to keep the terms presented both in modern English and Latin medical dictionaries.

§ 101. The names of medical examinations and methods of treatment

The names of medical examinations are usually formed by means of the final root elements **-graphia**, **-metria**, **-scopia**, **-diagnostica**:

cystographia, ae f — cystography, X-ray examination of the urinary bladder;

craniometria, ae f — craniometry, measuring of the skull;

proctoscopia, ae f — proctoscopy, internal examination of the rectum;

thermodiagnostica, ae f — thermodiagnosics, a diagnosis via registration of infrared radiation.

Names which signify methods of medical treatment usually contain the final root element **-therapia** and the initial root element pointing at the method of the treatment:

phytotherapia, ae f — phytotherapy, method of treatment by means of medicinal plants.

Results of X-ray, electric or other methods of medical examination are expressed by the final root **-gramma**:

haemogramma, ātis n — haemogram, results of quantitative and qualitative examination of blood;

rhinogramma, ātis n — rhinogram, X-ray film of the nose.

§ 102. Table of initial root elements

Greek initial roots and their variants	Latin equivalents in the dictionary form	English meaning	English word building equivalents
anthrop-	homo, ĩnis m	man, human	anthrop-
bi-	vita, ae f	life	bi-
cardi-, -cardia	cor, cordis n	heart	cardi-, -cardia
gloss-, -glossia	lingua, ae f	tongue	gloss-, -glossia
gynaec-	femĭna, ae f	woman	gynaec-
haem-, haemat-	sanguis, ĩnis m	blood	haem-, haemat-
neur-	nervus, i m	nerve	neur-
odont-, -odontia	dens, dentis m	tooth	odont-, -odontia
ophthalm-, -ophthalmia	ocŭlus, i m	eye	ophthalm-, -ophthalmia
ot-	auris, is f	ear	ot-

Greek initial roots and their variants	Latin equivalents in the dictionary form	English meaning	English word building equivalents
paed-	infans, ntis m, f	child	paed-
path-, -pathia	morbus, i m	disease	path-, -pathia
pharmac-	medicamentum, i n	drug	pharmac-
phthisi-	tuberculōsis, is f	tuberculosis	phthisi-
physi-	natūra, ae f	nature	physi-
phyt-	planta, ae f	plant	phyt-
proct-	rectum, i n	rectum	proct-
psych-	anĭmus, i m	psyche	psych-
rhin-	nasus, i m	nose	rhin-
stom-, stomat-, -stomia	os, oris n	mouth	stom-, stomat-, -stomia

§ 103. Table of final root elements

Final root elements	English meaning
-diagnostĭca	examination of functional state of organs in order to reveal some disorders
-gĕnus, a, um	1) caused by any factor 2) forming or producing any factor
-graphia	1) X-ray examination 2) examination by means of electricity 3) recording of the result of some examination
-gramma	result of some medical examination seen on a film or presented graphically
-iāter	medical specialist treating certain inner diseases
-iatria	any definite branch of clinical medicine
-logia	name of some science or branch of clinical medicine
-lōgus	name of medical or biological specialist
-metria	measurement of physical characteristics of human body
-scopia	visual or instrumental visual examination
-therapia	method of treatment

So, your task is to memorize the word building elements of this and the following lessons and combine these elements in terms. If you are not quite sure of your version of translation, consult the dictionary.

§ 104. Exercises

1. Determine (orally) the full dictionary form of each term and the meaning of the initial and final roots and write down the full definition of each term:

anthropologia; anthropogĕnus; biologia; cardiolōgus; cardiogĕnus; gynaecolōgus; haematologia; iatrogĕnus; neuropatholōgus; ophthalmoscopia; odontogĕnus; otorhinolaryngologia; physiologia; phthisiāter; phytotherapia; proctolōgus; psychiatria; rhinogramma; stomatoscopia.

2. Make up in the Latin dictionary form the one-word terms with the following meaning:

branch of clinical medicine treating rectum diseases; branch of clinical medicine treating diseases of children; medical specialist treating blood diseases; medical specialist treating diseases of inner organs; results of quantitative and qualitative examination of blood; science studying drugs and their usage;

treatment by means of natural or artificial physical factors; specialist studying forms of life and vital organisms; specialist studying the man in the process of his evolution; method of treatment by means of medicinal plants; the X-ray examination of tooth.

3. Give the full definition in English and the Latin dictionary form of the terms:

anthropologist; biopharmaceutics; cardiogram; cardiography; haematology; haemogram; iatrogenic; odontogram; neurogenic; ophthalmoscopy; otogenic; otorhinolaryngologist; paediatrician (paediatrist); pharmacotherapy; phthisiologist; phytotherapy; proctodiagnostics; proctoscopy; psychiatrist; psychogenic; psychologist; rhinoscopy; stomatology; stomatologist; therapist (therapist); thoracometry.

4. Give the Latin dictionary form and translate into English (A) and into Latin (B):

A. Caries dentium incisivōrum; curatio cariēi profundae; extractio dentis; foetor ex ore; fractūra mandibūlae; mobilītas dentium premolarium; herpes simplex (zoster); morbi allergīci; tuberculōsis laryngis.

B. Comatose state; denudation of the tooth cervix; devitalized teeth; diseases of the pulp; plicated tongue; rupture of nasal septum; short frenulum of upper lip; trauma of masticatory muscles; viral and bacterial infections.

§ 105. Vocabulary to lesson 13

I. Latin-English vocabulary

allergīcus, a, um	allergic
anthropologia, ae f	anthropology, science studying the man in the process of his evolution
anthropolōgus, i m	anthropologist, specialist studying the man in the process of his evolution
biologia, ae f	biology, science studying forms of life and vital organisms
cancer, cri m	cancer
cardiogēnus, a, um	cardiogenic, happening because of the heart
cardiolōgus, i m	cardiologist, medical specialist treating heart diseases
caries, ēi f	caries, a gradual decay or death of bone as a result of chronic infection
curatio, ōnis f	medical treatment
dentinogēnesis, is f	dentinogenesis, the formation and development of the dentine by the odontoblasts
extractio, ōnis f	extraction
foetor, ōris m	fetor, a foul odor or stench
fractūra, ae f	fracture
gynaecolōgus, i m	gynecologist, medical specialist treating genital diseases in women
haematologia, ae f	haematology, branch of medicine studying blood and its diseases

herpes, ētis m	herpes, inflammation of the skin or mucous membrane, with clusters of deep-seated vesicles
iatrogēnus, a, um	iatrogenic, happening because of the physician's manner or injudicious remarks
imperfectus, a, um	incoplete
incisīvus, a, um (dens)	incisor (tooth)
larynx, yngis m	larynx
lingua, ae f	tongue
luxatio, ōnis f	luxation, dislocation
mandibūla, ae f	mandible
mobilitāta, ātis f	mobility
morbus, i m	disease
mucōsus, a, um	mucous
neuropatholōgus, i m	neuropathologist, medical specialist treating diseases of the nervous system
odontogēnus, a, um	odontogenic, relating to the development of the teeth
odontogramma, ātis n	odontogram, X-ray film of the tooth
odontoscopia, ae f	odontoscopy, instrumental-visual examination of the tooth
ophthalmoscopia, ae f	ophthalmoscopy, instrumental-visual examination of the eye
os, oris n	mouth
otorhinolaryngologia, ae f	otorhinolaryngology, branch of medicine treating diseases of ear, nose and larynx
physiologia, ae f	physiology, science studying normal vital processes in human body
phthisiāter, tri m	phthisiologist, medical specialist treating tuberculosis
phytotherapia, ae f	phytotherapy, method of treatment by means of medicinal plants
plicātus, a, um	plicate, folded
premolāris, e (dens)	premolar (tooth)
proctolōgus, i m	proctologist, medical specialist treating diseases of rectum
profundus, a, um	deep
psychiatria, ae f	psychiatry, branch of medicine treating mental diseases
rhinogramma, ātis n	rhinogram, X-ray film of the nose
stomatoscopia, ae f	stomatoscopy, visual examination of the oral cavity
tuberculōsis, is f	tuberculosis
tunīca, ae f	1) layer, coat 2) membrane
zoster, ēris m	zoster

II. English-Latin vocabulary

amputation	amputatio, ōnis f
anthropologist, specialist studying the man in the process of his evolution	anthropolōgus, i m
bacterial	bacteriālis, e
biopharmaceutics, study of physical and chemical properties of medicinal substances	biopharmaceutīca, ae f
branch of clinical medicine treating rectum diseases, proctology	proctologia, ae f

branch of clinical medicine treating diseases of children, paediatrics	paediatrica, ae f
cardiogram 1) result of X-ray examination of the heart 2) graphical picture of heart action	cardiogramma, ātis n
cardiography 1) X-ray examination of the heart 2) graphical recording of heart action	cardiographia, ae f
cervix	cervix, īcis f
comatose, affected with coma	comatōsus, a, um
denudation, the state of being deprived of a protecting layer or covering	denudatio, ōnis f
devitalized, deprived of life or vitalizing properties	devitalisātus, a, um
fracture	fractūra, ae f
frenulum	frenūlum, i n
glossotomy, dissection of the tongue	glossotomia, ae f
haemogram, results of quantitative and qualitative examination of blood	haemogramma, ātis n
iatrogenic, happening because of the physician's manner or injudicious remarks	iatrogēnus, a, um
infection	infectio, ōnis f
lip	labium, i n
luxation, dislocation	luxatio, ōnis f
masticatory	masticatorius, a, um
medical specialist treating blood diseases, haematologist	haematolōgus, i m
medical specialist treating diseases of inner organs, therapist (therapist)	therapeutista, ae m
method of treatment by means of medicinal plants, phytotherapy	phytotherapia, ae f
nasal	nasālis, e
neurogenic, happening because of the nervous system disorders	neurogēnus, a, um
ophthalmoscopy, instrumental-visual examination of the eye	ophthalmoscopia, ae f
otogenic, happening because of the ear	otogēnus, a, um
otorhinolaryngologist, medical specialist treating ear, nose and larynx diseases	otothinolaryngolōgus, i m
paediatrician (paediatrist), medical specialist treating children's diseases	paediāter, tri m
pharmacotherapy, the treatment of disease with drugs	pharmacotherapia, ae f
phytotherapy, method of treatment by means of medicinal plants	phytotherapia, ae f
plicated	plicātus, a, um
proctodiagnostics, examination of the functional state of the rectum	proctodiagnostīca, ae f
proctoscopy, instrumental-visual examination of the rectum	proctoscopia, ae f
phthisiologist, medical specialist treating tuberculosis	phthisiāter, tri m
psychiatrist, medical specialist treating mental diseases	psychiāter, tri m
psychologist, specialist studying mental activities of a human personality	psycolōgus, i m
pulp	pulpa, ae f
results of quantitative and qualitative examination of blood, haemogram	haemogramma, ātis n
rhinoscopy, instrumental-visual examination of the nose	rhinoscopia, ae f

rupture, the breaking or forcible disruption of continuity of the bone or an other structure	ruptūra, ae f
science studying drugs and their usage, pharmacology	pharmacologia, ae f
septum	septum, i n
short	brevis, e
somatology, branch of anthropology, studying structure of human body	somatologia, ae f
specialist studying forms of life and vital organisms, biologist	biolōgus, i m
specialist studying the man in the process of his evolution, anthropologist	anthropolōgus, i m
state	status, us m
stomatology, branch of clinical medicine treating diseases of the oral cavity	stomatologia, ae f
therapeutist (therapist), medical specialist treating diseases of inner organs	therapeutista, ae m
thoracometry, measurement of the size of the thorax	thoracometria, ae f
tongue	lingua, ae f
tonsillectomy, the surgical operation for removal of a tonsill	tonsillectomia, ae f
trauma, injury	trauma, ātis n
treatment by means of natural or artificial physical factors, physiotherapy	physiotherapia, ae f
tuberculosis, the disease caused by infection with the Mycobacterium tuberculosis	tuberculōsis, is f
viral	virālis, e
the X-ray examination of tooth, odontography	odontographia, ae f

LESSON 14

ONE-WORD NAMES OF FUNCTION DISORDERS, PATHOLOGICAL PROCESSES AND ABNORMAL CONDITIONS

§ 106. Composition of one-word names of functional disorders

Usually, one-word names of functional disorders are composed of Greek prefixes and roots. There are the following prefixes:

1. The prefix **a-** (before a consonant) or **an-** (before a vowel). This prefix signifies cessation or loss of a function as well as lack of property:

adentia, ae f — adentia, lack of teeth;

anuria, ae f — anuria, complete cessation of the secretion and excretion of urine;

aphagia, ae f — aphagia, a condition in which the ability of swallowing is lacking.

In the same way the Latin prefix **in-** (**im-** before consonants **b** or **m**) combined with Latin roots is used both in nouns and adjectives:

incontinentia, ae f — incontinence, lack of voluntary control over the discharge of faeces or urine;

insufficiētia, ae f — insufficiency, state of being inadequate to perform normal functions;

immobilitas, ātis f — immobility, lack of mobility;

insensibilis, e — insensible, lack of sensibility or intelligence.

2. The prefix **dys-** signifies functional disorders:

dysgeusia, ae f — dysgeusia, impairment or perversion of the sense of taste;

dysthyreōsis, is f — dysthyreōsis, imperfect functioning of the thyroid gland;

dysuria, ae f — dysuria, condition in which the passage of urine is difficult.

3. The prefix **en-** (**em-** before consonants **b, m, p**) indicates the inner location of any morbid condition:

empyēma, ātis n — empyema, accumulation of pus in a cavity;

enophthalmus, i m — enophthalmus, recession of the eyeball into the cavity of the orbit.

As prefixed elements some Greek adjectives, pronouns and numerals are used:

Prefix	Meaning	Latin example	English translation
auto-	self-, resulting of one's own action	autopepsia, ae f (autolysis, is f)	autopepsia (autolysis), the process of spontaneous disintegration of cells and tissues resulting from the action of intracellular enzymes
mono-	one (part)	monoplegia, ae f	monoplegia, a pathological condition in which only one muscle, one group of muscles or one part of the body is affected
di-	two (parts)	diplegia, ae f	diplegia, paralysis of similar parts on both sides of the body
hemi-	half	hemialgia, ae f	hemialgia, neuralgic pain affecting the right or the left side of the body or the right or the left side of any part of the body

§ 107. Composition of one-word names of pathological processes and abnormal conditions

The majority of one-word names of pathological processes and abnormal conditions are composed of Greek roots, suffixes and endings which are adapted to Latin grammar system. One group of terms consists of a root, a suffix and an ending. Two suffixes of this group compose a morphological unity with their endings:

Latin final element	Meaning	Latin example	English equivalent	Full English explanation
-ismus (suffix -ism- + -us , ending of the 2 nd declension)	abnormality or pathological process, the meaning of which is determined by the root element	botulismus, i m	botulism	a form of food poisoning due to the botulinum toxin
-ōsis (suffix -ōs- + -is , ending of the 3 rd declension)	pathological condition or process	dermatōsis, is f	dermatosis	any skin disease

Attention! The final element **-ōsis** may be used as the morphological part of a noun term not denoting a disease:

diagnōsis, is f — diagnosis, the scientific recognition of the disease from which a person suffers;

symbiōsis, is f — symbiosis, the intimate association of two organisms.

The next two final elements are considered as final elements of the nouns of the 3-rd declension:

Latin final element	Meaning	Latin example	English equivalent	Full English explanation
-ēma	different pathological conditions	enanthēma, ātis n	enanthema	the rash or eruption on the mucous tissue
-iāsis	different pathological conditions	psoriāsis, is f	psoriasis	a chronic disease of the skin characterized by the appearance of laminated scales

But the majority of terms composed of morphological elements present with initial and final roots. First of all, the root **path-** combined with the final element **-ia** is used:

arthropathia, ae f — arthropathy, any disease affecting a joint;

nephropathia, ae f — nephropathy, a disease of the kidney;

rhinopathia, ae f — rhinopathy, any morbid condition of the nose.

Other roots are also used as final elements which define more precisely the character of pathological condition, e. g.:

angiorrhagia, ae f — angiorrhagia, a haemorrhage from a vessel;

arthralgia, ae f — arthralgia, any kind of pain affecting a joint;

cancerophobia, ae f — cancerophobia (= carcinomatophobia), unfounded or unreasonable fear that there is a predisposition to carcinoma.

Nevertheless, about 20 % of one-word terms signifying pathological processes and abnormal conditions are nouns comprised of one root:

coma, ātis n — coma, the state of complete loss of consciousness with a disorder of vitally important functions;

infarctus, us m — infarct, an area of dead tissue produced by the obstruction of an end artery;

insultus, us m — cerebral thrombosis, stroke;

sepsis, is f — sepsis, infection with pyogenic microorganisms.

Sometimes, to correct or improve some abnormal condition of the organism, one must use an operative interference. The names of such operative interferences are composed with the help of an initial Greek root signifying the object of this interference and final root elements **-tomia** (operative cutting) or **-ectomy** (amputation or excision of an organ or its part), for example:

osteotomia, ae f — osteotomy, the operation of cutting through a bone;

tonsillectomia, ae f — tonsillectomy, surgical excision of a tonsil.

Surgical removal of a part, usually of some magnitude, e. g. jaw, stomach etc. is named resectio, ōnis f (resection), for example:

Resectio gingivae — gum resection, resection of the gingiva.

The full removal of an organ or an anatomical structure is named amputatio, ōnis f (amputation), for example:

amputatio radice dentis — amputation of tooth root.

§ 108. Table of initial root elements

Greek initial roots and their variants	Latin equivalents in the dictionary form	English meaning	English word building equivalents
angi-	vas, vasis n	vessel	angi-
arthr-	articulatio, ōnis f	joint	arthr-
brady-	lentus, a, um	slow	brady-
cephal-, -cephalia	caput, ĩtis n	head	cephal-, -cephaly
chondr-	cartilāgo, ĩnis f	cartilage	chondr-
dactyl-, -dactylia	digĭtus, i m	finger or toe	dactyl-
derm-, dermat-, -dermia, -derma	cutis, is f	skin	derm-, dermat-, -dermia, -derma
encephal-	cerĕbrum, i n	brain	encephal-
my-	muscŭlus, i m	muscle	my-
nephr-	ren, renis m	kidney	nephr-
oste-	os, ossis n	bone	oste-
phon-, -phonia	vox, vocis f	voice	phon-, -phonia
phot-	lux, lucis f	light	phot-
phleb-	vena, ae f	vein	phleb-
pseud-	falsus, a, um	false	pseud-
spasm-, -spasmus	spasmus, i m	spasm	spasm-, -spasm
tox-, toxic-	venĕnum, i n	poison	tox-, toxic-
tachy-	celer, ěris, ěre	fast, quick	tachy-
trich-, -trichia	capillus, i m; pilus, i m	hair	trich-
xer-	siccus, a, um	dry	xer-

§ 109. Table of final root elements

Final root elements	English meaning
-algia	pain in any part of the body
-ectomia	amputation or excision of an organ or its part
-geusia	different pathological conditions of taste
-kinesia	different pathological conditions of voluntary motion
-mania	any form of mental disorder accompanied by some degree of excitation
-mycōsis	a morbid condition caused by a pathogenic fungus
-opia, -opsia	any condition of vision
-pepsia	any condition of digestion
-phagia	any pathological condition in the act of swallowing

Final root elements	English meaning
-philia	predisposition to any morbid condition
-phobia	a pathological fear
-plegia	paralysis (palsy) of the muscles of any organ
-pnoë	a pathological condition of breathing
-tomia	operative cutting
-trophia	nutrition

§ 110. Exercises

1. Complete (orally) the dictionary form of each noun. Determine the meaning of each initial and final morphological element; write down the full definition of each term and its English equivalent:

angiopathia; autohaemotherapia; bradyphagia; bradypnoë; chondropathia; dactylospasmus; dermatōsis; dermatomycōsis; dysgeusia; encephalogramma; gastrospasmus; hemicrania; hemiplegia; monodactylismus; myoplegia; myotomia; osteopathia; phlebocarcinōma; phlebotomia; photophobia; pseudoanodontia; pseudarthrōsis; spasmophilia; stomatomycōsis; tachycardia; toxicomania; xerophthalmia.

2. Make up the Latin dictionary form of one-word terms with the following meaning:

abnormal quickness in eating; a chronic disease of the skin, characterized by the appearance of laminated scales; a condition in which the ability to swallow is lacking; any disease affecting a joint; any disease of the skin; any morbid condition or abnormal growth of the hair; any morbid condition of the nose; a pathological condition in which only one muscle, one group of muscles or one part of the body is affected; an impairment of the voice; any kind of pain affecting a joint; paralysis of similar parts on both sides of the body; the rash or eruption on the mucous tissue; the X-ray examination of the great vessels and the chambers of the heart; unfounded or unreasonable fear that there is a predisposition to carcinoma.

3. Give the full definition in English and the Latin dictionary form of the terms:

angiology; apnoea; arthralgia; atrichia; atrophy; bradycardia; cephalalgia; didactylism; dystrophy; glossotomy; hemiatrophy; haemophilia; mastopathy; nephrogenic; nephropathy; ophthalmoplegia; osteochondrosis; osteodystrophy; osteotomy; pharmacophobia; phoniatics; phlebography; phonocardiogram; photophobia; proctospasm; rhinopathy; tachyphagia; tonsillectomy; toxicosis; xerostomia.

4. Give the dictionary form and translate into English (A) and into Latin (B):

A. Atrophia papillārum linguae; cysta dentālis radiculāris; defectus cuneiformis dentium; dysplasia enamēli; exacerbatio parodontōsis chronīcae; fistūla suppuratīva buccae; resectio mandibūlae; ulcus linguae.

B. Actinomycosis of salivary glands; amputation of tooth root; diabetic coma; hyperesthesia of the hard teeth tissues; insufficiency of the cardiac valves; prophylaxis of malignant tumors; protrusive occlusion.

§ 111. Vocabulary to lesson 14

I. Latin-English vocabulary

allergīcus, a, um	allergic
angiopathia, ae f	angiopathy, any disease of blood vessels
arthromalacia, ae f	arthromalacia, softening of joints
atrophia, ae f	atrophy, a condition of general malnutrition from whatever cause
autohaemotherapia, ae f	autohaemotherapy, a method of treatment in which the patient's own blood is administered to him
bradyphagia, ae f	bradyphagia, slowing of swallowing
bradypnoë, ës f	an abnormally slow rate of breathing, bradypnea
bucca, ae f	cheek
cariōsus, a, um	carious, affected with caries
chondropathia, ae f	chondropathy, any disease affecting a cartilage
chronīcus, a, um	chronic, long continued
cuneiformis, e	cuneiform
cysta, ae f	cyst, a cavity lined by an inflamed or neoplastic tissue
dactylospasmus, i m	dactylospasm, spasmodic contraction of a finger or toe
defectus, us m	a defect
dentālis, e	dental
dermatōsis, is f	dermatosis, any disease of the skin
dermatomycōsis, is f	dermatomycosis, a generic term for all cutaneous infections due to fungi
dysgeusia, ae f	dysgeusia, impairment or perversion of the sense of taste
dysplasia, ae f	dysplasia, abnormal development of tissue
enamēlum, i n	enamel
encephalogramma, ātis n	encephalogram, any X-ray film obtained in the radiological examination of the ventricles and subarachnoid space of the brain
exacerbatio, ōnis f	exacerbation, increase in severity of a disease
fistūla, ae f	fistula, an unnatural communication between an organ and the body surface
gastrospasmus, i m	gastrospasm, an involuntary contraction of the stomach muscle
hemicrania, ae f	hemicrania, a periodic morbid condition with localized headaches
hemiplegia, ae f	hemiplegia, paralysis of one side of the body
monodactylismus, i m	monodactylism, a congenital condition in which only one finger or toe is present on the hand or the foot
morbus, i m	disease
myoplegia, ae f	myoplegia, paralysis of muscle or a condition in which muscular force is decreased
myotomia, ae f	the dissection of a muscle or of muscular tissue, myotomy

osteomalacia, ae f	osteomalacia, softening of bones
osteopathia, ae f	osteopathia, disease of bones
papilla, ae f	papilla
parodontōsis, is f (=periodontōsis, is f)	parodontosis, any degenerative change occurring in alveolar periosteum
phlebocarcinōma, ātis n	phlebocarcinoma, a malignant epithelial tumour affecting a vein
photophobia, ae f	photophobia, abnormal intolerance to light
pseudarthrōsis, is f	pseudarthrosis, a false joint formed between the fragments of a fractured bone which have failed to unite
radiculāris, e	radicular
resectio, ōnis f	resection, surgical removal of a part
spasmophilia, ae f	spasmophilia, a morbid state in which there is a tendency to convulsions and a spasm
stomatomycōsis, is f	stomatomycosis, any morbid condition caused by a microscopical fungus
suppuratīvus, a, um	suppurative, pus-forming; having a tendency toward suppuration
tachycardia, ae f	tachycardia, a rapid action of the heart
toxicomania, ae f	toxicomania, an insane desire for poison
ulcus, ěris n	an ulcer, a localized necrotic lesion of the skin or a mucous surface

II. English-Latin vocabulary

abnormal quickness in eating, tachyphagia	tachyphagia, ae f
actinomycosis, an infective disease, caused by Actinomyces israeli	actinomycōsis, is f
acute	acūtus, a, um
amputation, the removal of a limb or portion of a limb, or of any other appendage	amputatio, ōnis f
angiology, the science of blood vessels	angiologia, ae f
any disease affecting a joint, arthropathy	arthropathia, ae f
any disease of the skin, dermatosis	dermatōsis, is f
any kind of pain affecting a joint, arthralgia	arthralgia, ae f
any morbid condition of the nose, rhinopathy	rhinopathia, ae f
any morbid condition or abnormal growth of the hair, trichopathy	trichopathia, ae f
apnea, the cessation of breathing	apnoĕ, ěs f
arthralgia, any kind of pain affecting a joint	arthralgia, ae f
atrachia, not having hair	atrachia, ae f
atrophy, a condition of general malnutrition from whatever cause	atrophia, ae f
biopsy, examination for purposes of diagnosis of tissue cut from the living body	biopsia, ae f
bradycardia, slowing of the heart rate	bradycardia, ae f
cardiac	cardiācus, a, um
cephalalgia, pain in the head	cephalalgia, ae f
a chronic disease of the skin, characterized by the appearance of laminated scales, psoriasis	psoriāsis, is f
coma, the state of complete loss of consciousness from which the patient can not be roused by any ordinary external stimulus	coma, ātis n

a condition in which the ability to swallow is lacking, aphagia	aphagia, ae f
diabetic, relating to diabetes	diabetīcus, a, um
didactylism, the congenital condition of having only two fingers on a hand or two toes on a foot	didactylismus, i m
dysplasia, abnormal development of tissue	dysplasia, ae f
dystrophy, a disorder of the structure and functions of an organ or tissue due to perverted nutrition	dystrophia, ae f
encephalomalacia, softening of the brain	encephalomalacia, ae f
fibrous	fibrōsus, a, um
gland	glandūla, ae f
hard	durus, a, um
haemophilia, a severe hereditary bleeding disease affecting males and transmitted by females	haemophilia, ae f
hemiatrophy, atrophy affecting only one side of the body, or one half of an organ	hemiatrophia, ae f
impairment of the voice, dysphonia	dysphonia, ae f
infection	infectio, ōnis f
insufficiency	insufficientia, ae f
intravenous	intravenōsus, a, um
lingual	linguālis, e
malignant (neoplasm), indicative of danger to ill	malignus, a, um
mastopathy, any diseased condition of the mammary gland	mastopathia, ae f
medical specialist treating diseases of inner organs, therapist (therapist)	therapeutista, ae m
monopathophobia, fear of a particular disease	monopathophobia, ae f
monostotic, pertaining to a singular bone	monostotīcus, a, um
myopia, short sight	myopia, ae f
narcosis	narcōsis, is f
nephrogenic, produced by or originating in the kidney	nephrogēnus, a, um
nephropathy, disease of the kidney	nephropathia, ae f
occlusion, the contact between upper and lower teeth on the closure of the jaws or during normal movement of the mandible	occlusio, ōnis f
ophthalmoplegia, palsy (paralysis) of ocular muscles	ophthalmoplegia, ae f
osteochondrosis, a degenerative change in bony and cartilage tissues	osteochondrōsis, is f
osteodystrophy, a disorder of bone nutrition	osteodystrophia, ae f
paralysis of similar parts on both sides of the body, diplegia	diplegia, ae f
a pathological condition in which only one muscle, one group of muscles or one part of the body is affected, monoplegia	monoplegia, ae f
pharmacophobia, a morbid fear of taking drugs or medicines	pharmacophobia, ae f
phoniatics (= phoniatri), the treatment of disorders of speech	phoniatria, ae f
phlebography 1) a radiographic visualization of veins 2) the tracing of the venous pulse by means of a phlebograph	phlebographia, ae f
phonocardiogram, the record produced by an instrument for recording heart sounds	phonocardiogramma, ātis n
photophobia, abnormal intolerance to light	photophobia, ae f
proctospasm, a spasmodic contraction of the rectum	proctospasmus, i m
progressive	progressīvus, a, um
prophylaxis, the art of preventing disease	prophylaxis, is f

protrusive, removed ahead	protrusīvus, a, um
the rash or eruption on the mucous tissue, enanthema	enanthēma, ātis n
rhinopathy, any morbid condition of the nose	rhinopathia, ae f
salivary	salivarius, a, um
tachyphagia, abnormal quickness in eating	tachyphagia, ae f
tissue	textus, us m
toxicosis, a pathological condition caused by the absorption of poisons	toxicōsis, is f
tumor	tumor, ōris m
unfounded or unreasonable fear that there is a predisposition to carcinoma, cancerophobia (= carcinomatophobia)	cancerophobia, ae f
valve	valva, ae f
viral	virālis, e
xerostomia, dryness of the mouth due to failure of the salivary gland	xerostomia, ae f
the X-ray examination of the great vessels and the chambers of the heart, angiocardiology	angiocardiology, ae f

LESSON 15

NAMES OF QUALITATIVE AND QUANTITATIVE ABNORMALITIES IN MORPHOLOGICAL STRUCTURES AND PHYSIOLOGICAL PROCESSES

§ 112. Increase and decrease in different quantitative conditions

Increase and decrease of different quantitative conditions may, as a rule, be expressed by means of the prefixes **hyper-** and **hypo-** which are joined by final root elements:

hyperaesthesia, ae f — hyperaesthesia, excessive sensitiveness of the skin;

hyperkinesia, ae f — hyperkinesia (hyperkinesis), a condition in which there is abnormally great strength of movement;

hyperplasia, ae f — hyperplasia, any condition in which there is an increase in the number of cells in a part;

hypodynamia, ae f — hypodynamia, diminished muscular or nervous energy;

hypogalactia, ae f — hypogalactia, the secretion of a too small quantity of milk;

hypopepsia, ae f — hypopepsia, abnormal slowness and weakness of the process of digestion.

Increase and decrease in the functional activity is sometimes expressed by means of the initial roots **tachy-** and **brady-**:

tachypnoë, ës f — tachypnoea, abnormally rapid breathing;

bradykinesia, ae f — bradykinesia, abnormal sluggishness of physical movements.

§ 113. Increase or decrease in dimension of anatomical and histological structures

Increase in size is expressed by means of the following initial and final roots: **dolich-**, **macr-**, **mega-**, **megal-**, **-megalia**:

dolichocōlon, i n — dolichocolon, an abnormally long colon of normal diameter;

macrocytus, i m — macrocyte, a red blood cell that is larger than normal;

megaduodēnum, i n — megaduodenum, duodenum of abnormally large size;

megalosplenia, ae f — megalosplenia, enlargement of the spleen;

hepatomegalia, ae f — hepatomegalia, a condition of enlargement of the liver.

Decrease in size of anatomical and histological structures is expressed by means of the initial roots **brachy-** and **micr-**:

brachydactylia ae f — brachydactylia, a condition in which there are abnormally short fingers or toes;

microcephālus, i m — microcephalus, a person with an unusually small size of head.

Dilatation or narrowing in volume of a hollow organ, cavity or tube is expressed by means of the following roots: **-ectasia**, **-ectāsis**, **-dilatatio**, **sten-**, **-stenōsis**:

bronchiectāsis, is f — bronchiectasis, a condition of dilatation of a bronchus or bronchi;

gastrectasia, ae f — gastrectasia, dilatation of the stomach;

vasodilatatio, ōnis f — vasodilatation, dilatation of a blood vessel;

stenostomia, ae f — stenostomy, abnormal narrowness of the mouth;

oesophagostenōsis, is f — oesophagostenosis, narrowing of the oesophagus.

§ 114. Increase and decrease in the quantity of anatomical and histological structures

Increase and decrease in the quantity of anatomical and histological structures is expressed by means of the roots **olig-**, **poly-**, **-penia**:

oligodontia (=oligodentia), ae f — oligodontia, a state in which most of the teeth are lacking;

polyarthropathia, ae f — polyarthropathy, a pathological condition involving many joints;

erythropenia, ae f — erythropenia, a state in which there are too few erythrocytes in the blood.

Increase in the quantity of any anatomical or histological structure may also be expressed by the final element **-ōsis**:

leucocytōsis, is f — leucocytosis, an increase in the total number of leucocytes in the blood;

papillomatōsis, is f — papillomatosis, the condition of diffuse formation of papillomata.

§ 115. Table of initial root elements

Greek initial roots and their variants	Latin equivalents in the dictionary form	English meaning	English word building equivalents
aesthes-, -aesthesia	sensus, us m	sensibility, sensitiveness	aesthes-, -aesthesia
brachy-	brevis, e	short	brachy-
cheil-, -cheilia	labium, i n	lip	cheil-, -cheilia
cyt-, -cȳtus	cellŭla, ae f	cell	cyt-, -cyte
dolich-	longus, a, um	long	dolich-
erythr-	ruber, bra, brum	red	erythr-
gen-, -genia	mandibŭla, ae f	mandible	gen-, -genia
glyc-	dulcis, e	sugar	glyc-
gnath-, -gnathia	maxilla, ae f	maxilla, upper jaw	gnath-, -gnathia
leuc-	albus, a, um	white	leuc-
macr-, mega-, megal-, -megalialia	magnus, a, um	large	macr-, mega-, megal-, -megalialia
melan-	niger, gra, grum	black	melan-
micr-	parvus, a, um	small	micr-
myel-, -myelia	1) medulla ossium 2) medulla spinālis	1) bone marrow 2) spinal cord	myel-, -myelia
olig-	parvus, a, um	few	olig-
pod-, -podia	pes, pedis m	foot	pod-, -podia
poly-	multus, a, um	many	poly-
splen-, -splenia	lien, ēnis m	spleen	splen-, -splenia
therm-, -thermia	1) calor, ōris m 2) temperaturā, ae f	1) heat 2) temperature	therm-, -thermia
thyr(e)-	glandŭla thyr(e)oidea	thyroid (gland)	thyro-

Attention!

1. The initial roots **macr-** and **megal-** may be used in many (but not in all!) cases as synonyms: macrocephalia = megalcephalia, macropodia = megalopodia. When choosing the necessary variant of the initial root one should consult the dictionary.

2. The root **-cyt-** can be omitted if the term begins with **erythrocyt-** or **leucocyt-** and ends with **-penia**:

erythrocytopenia = erythropenia; leucocytopenia = leucopenia, but: monocytopenia, thrombocytopenia — the only variants.

§ 116. Table of final root elements

Final root elements	English meaning
-aemia	any condition of the blood
-ectasia, -ectāsis, -dilatatio	dilatation
-genēsis	the origin and (formative) development
-mnesia	any condition of the memory
-penia	a diminution in the number of any kind of cells present in the blood
-phrenia	a condition associated with a serious mental disorder
-plasia	the development of tissues
-poēsis	the formation 1) of cells present in the blood 2) of lymph 3) of urine
-sthenia	any condition of strength, vigor or forcefulness
-tensio	a condition of arterial blood pressure
-tonia	a condition of muscular tension in the walls of vessels and bowels

§ 117. Exercises

1. Complete (orally) the dictionary form of each noun. Determine the meaning of each initial and final morphological element; write down the full definition of each term as well as its English equivalent:

amnesia; anaesthesiolōgus; apodia; asthenia; brachycheilia; brachydactylia; dolichocephalia; dysthyreōsis; erythropenia; glossoplegia; glycaemia; hyperaemia; hyperthermia; hypotonia; leucocytōsis; melanoderma; microgenia; micromyelia; odontogenēsis; oligocytaemia; oligodontia (=oligodentia); oligophrenia; polymastia; prognathia; splenomegalia; thermotherapia; thrombocytopoēsis; thyreotoxicōsis.

2. Make up the Latin dictionary form of one-word terms with the following meaning:

abnormal narrowness of the mouth; abnormal slowness and weakness of the process of digestion; abnormal sluggishness of physical movements; a condition in which there are abnormally short fingers or toes; a condition of enlargement of the liver; an abnormally long colon of normal diameter; an increase in the total number of leucocytes; a pathological condition involving many joints; a red blood cell that is larger than normal; a state in which most of the teeth are lacking; a state in which there are too few erythrocytes; dilatation of the stomach; excessive sensitiveness of any organ or part of the body; the origin and development of bone marrow; the origin and development of morbid condition; extremely rapid breathing.

3. Give the full definition and the Latin dictionary form of the terms:

aglossia; ana(e)mia; brachyoesophagus; cytology; dolichocolon; dystonia; erythema; gnathalgia; haematomyelia; halitosis; hepatomegalia; hyperaesthesia; hyperglycaemia; hypertension; hypomnesia; hypophrenia; hypoplasia; hypothermia; macrocyte; megaloduodenum; megalomania; melanocarcinoma; microcephaly; microgenia; monocytopoiesis; myelocytaemia; oligodactylia; podagra; podalgia; polyavitaminosis; splenohepatomegaly.

4. Give the Latin dictionary form and translate into English (A) and into Latin (B):

A. Anaesthesia intraorālis; gingivītis ulcerōsa; hypertrophia muscūli massetēris; hypoplasia enamēli; odontogenēsis imperfecta; syndrōmum immunodeficientiae acquisitae; trismus gradus primi.

B. Chemical burn of the face; false diastema; gingival abscess; haemolytic an(a)emia of pregnancy; latent hypermetropia; primary hypothyroidism; progressive facial hemiatrophy; true hyposalivation; viral warts.

§ 118. Vocabulary to lesson 15

I. Latin-English vocabulary

acquisītus, a, um	acquired
actinomycōsis, is f	actinomycosis, an infective disease, caused by <i>Actinomyces israeli</i>
amnesia, ae f	amnesia, loss of memory of varying degree
anaemia, ae f	an(a)emia, a condition of the blood in which there are quantitative and qualitative changes in the red cells and haemoglobin
anaesthesia, ae f	anesthesia, loss of feeling or sensation in some part of the body due to nervous lesion or a local anesthetic agent
anaesthesiolōgus, i m	anesthesiologist, medical specialist in the administration of anesthetics
apodia, ae f	apodia, congenital absence of feet
asthenia, ae f	asthenia, loss of vital forces
atrophia, ae f	atrophy, a condition of general malnutrition from whatever cause
brachydactylia, ae f	brachydactylia, a condition in which there are abnormally short fingers or toes
dolichocephalia, ae f	dolichocephalia, the state of having a relatively long skull
dysthyreōsis, is f	dysthyreosis, imperfect function of the thyroid gland
erythropenia, ae f	erythropenia, a state in which there are too few erythrocytes
gingivītis, itīdis f	gingivitis, inflammation of the gingival margins around the teeth, manifested by swelling and bleeding
glandūla, ae f	gland
glossoplegia, ae f	glossoplegia, paralysis of the tongue
glycaemia, ae f	glycemia, a condition in which the circulating blood contains a quantity of sugar above normal amounts
gradus, us m	grade
hyperaemia, ae f	hyperaemia, an excess of blood in any part of the body
hyperthermia, ae f	hyperthermia, very high body temperature
hypertrophia, ae f	hypertrophy, an increase in the number or size of the cells of which a tissue is composed as the result of increase in function of that tissue

hypoplasia, ae f	hypoplasia, defective formation or underdevelopment of a tissue or part
hypotonia, ae f	hypotonia, lessened tension in any body structure
immunodeficientia, ae f	immunodeficiency
imperfectus, a, um	incomplete
intraorālis, e	intraoral
leucocytōsis, is f	leucocytosis, an increase in the total number of leucocytes in the blood
m. massēter, ēris m	masseter (muscle)
melanoderma, ātis n	melanoderma, a condition in which there is an unusually large accumulation of melanin in the skin
microcheilia, ae f	microcheilia, a condition in which the lips are abnormally small
microgenia, ae f	microgenia, a condition in which the chin is of unusually small size
micromyelia, ae f	micromyelia, general reduction in size of the spinal cord
odontogenēsis, is f	odontogenesis, the origin and formative development of teeth
oligocytaemia, ae f	oligocytaemia, a condition in the blood in which there is cell deficiency
oligodentia, ae f (=oligodontia, ae f)	oligodontia, a state in which most of the teeth are lacking
oligophrenia, ae f	oligophrenia, congenital lack of the mentality
polymastia, ae f	polymastia, a state in which in human beings there are more than two distinct mammary glands
primus, a, um	first
prognathia, ae f	prognatism, a condition in which there is abnormal projection of one or both jaws
salivarius, a, um	salivary
splenomegalia, ae f	splenomegalia, enlargement of the spleen
syndrōmum, i n	syndrome, a distinct group of symptoms or signs which, associated together, form a characteristic clinical picture of a disease
thermotherapia, ae f	thermotherapia, the use of heat in the treatment of disease
thrombocytopoēsis, is f	thrombocytopoiesis, the formation of blood platelets
thyreotoxicōsis, is f	thyrotoxicosis, any toxic condition attributable to hyperactivity of the thyroid gland
trismus, i m	trismus, inability to open the mouth due to tonic contracture of the muscles of the jaw
ulcerōsus, a, um	ulcerous, having the characteristics of an ulcer

II. English-Latin vocabulary

abnormal slowness and weakness of the process of digestion, hypopepsia	hypopepsia, ae f
abnormal sluggishness of physical movements, bradykinesia	bradykinesia, ae f
an abnormally long colon of normal diameter, dolichocolon	dolichocōlon, i n
abnormally rapid breathing, tachypnoea	tachypnoë, ës f
abscess, an accumulation of pus circumscribed in a cavity produced by tissue disintegration	abscessus, us m

aglossia, a congenital condition of being devoid of a tongue	aglossia, ae f
an(a)emia, a condition of the blood in which there are quantitative and qualitative changes in the red cells resulting in a reduction in the total amount of blood	anaemia, ae f
burn, an injury caused by heat or by chemical or physical agents having an effect similar to heat	combustio, ōnis f
brachyoesophagus, a congenitally short oesophagus	brachyoesophāgus, i m
chemical	chemīcus, a, um
a condition in which there are abnormally short fingers or toes, brachydactylia	brachydactylia, ae f
a condition of enlargement of the liver, hepatomegalia	hepatomegalia, ae f
cytology, the science of the form and functions of cells	cytologia, ae f
deviation, an abnormal variant in the development	deviatio, ōnis f
diastema, a pronounced gap between the lateral incisors	diastēma, ātis n
dilatation of the stomach, gastrectasia	gastrectasia, ae f
dolichocolon, an abnormally long colon of normal diameter	dolichocōlon, i n
dystonia, a state of disordered tonicity	dystonia, ae f
erythema, redness of the skin due to hyperaemia	erythēma, ātis n
excessive sensitiveness of any organ or part of the body, hyperaesthesia	hyperaesthesia, ae f
extremely rapid breathing, tachypnoea	tachypnoë, ës f
false	falsus, a, um
gingival	gingivālis, e
gnathalgia, pain in one or both jaws	gnathalgia, ae f
halitosis, fetid or offensive breath	halitōsis, is f
haematomyelia, bleeding within the substance of the spinal cord	haematomyelia, ae f
hemiatrophy, atrophy affecting only one side of the body, or a half of an organ	hemiatrophia, ae f
haemolytic, pertaining to or causing haemolysis	haemolytīcus, a, um
hepatomegalia, a condition of enlargement of the liver	hepatomegalia, ae f
hyperaesthesia, excessive sensitiveness of any organ or part of the body	hyperaesthesia, ae f
hyperglycaemia, an excessive amount of sugar in the blood	hyperglycaemia, ae f
hypertension, high arterial blood pressure	hypertensio, ōnis f
hypermetropia, a condition in which the image of an object viewed by the eye is formed behind the retina	hypermetropia, ae f
hypomnesia, a weak or defective state of the memory	hypomnesia, ae f
hypophrenia, feebleness of mind	hypophrenia, ae f
hypoplasia, underdevelopment of a tissue or part	hypoplasia, ae f
hyposalivation, a condition in which there is abnormal decrease in the secretion of saliva	hyposalivatio, ōnis f
hypothermia, deficiency of body heat	hypothermia, ae f
hypothyroidism, a condition caused by underactivity of the thyroid gland	hypothyroidismus, i m (= hypothyreōsis, is f)
an increase in the total number of leucocytes, leucocytosis	leucocytōsis, is f
latent, existing but not manifest	latens, ntis
macrocyte, a red blood cell that is larger than normal	macrocytus, i m

megaloduodenum, duodenum of abnormally large size	megaloduodēnum, i n
melanocarcinoma, a darkly pigmented malignant epithelial tumor	melanocarcinōma, ātis n
microcephaly, unusual smallness of the head	microcephalia, ae f
microgenia, a condition in which the chin is of unusually small size	microgenia, ae f
monocytopenia, the production of monocytes in the bone marrow	monocytopenia, is f
myelocytopenia, the presence of myelocytes in the blood	myelocytopenia, ae f
oligodactyly, a congenital deficiency of fingers or toes	oligodactyly, ae f
the origin and development of a morbid condition, pathogenesis	pathogenesis, is f
the origin and development of the bone marrow, myelogenesis	myelogenesis, is f
a pathological condition involving many joints, polyarthropathy	polyarthropathy, ae f
podagra, gout, a disease of the purine metabolism characterized by attacks of arthritis with an associated raised serum uric acid	podāgra, ae f
podalgia, sensation of pain in the foot	podalgia, ae f
polyvitaminosis, a morbid condition caused by deficiency of several vitamins	polyvitaminosis, is f
pregnancy	graviditas, ātis f
primary	primarius, a, um
a red blood cell that is larger than normal, macrocyte	macrocytus, i m
splenohepatomegaly, enlargement of the spleen and the liver	splenohepatomegalia ae f
a state in which most of the teeth are lacking, oligodontia	oligodontia, ae f
a state in which there are too few erythrocytes, erythropenia	erythropenia, ae f
wart, a circumscribed, cutaneous excrescence having a papilliferous surface	verruca, ae f

LESSON 16

NAMES OF INFLAMMATORY PROCESSES WHICH OCCUR IN ORGANS AND TISSUES. ONE-WORD NAMES OF ENDOGENOUS PATHOLOGICAL CHANGES AND MALFORMATIONS

§ 119. Names of inflammatory conditions

The state of inflammation in any organ or tissue, as a rule, is usually expressed by means of the final suffixed ending **-ītis** which is transformed into **-itīdis** in the Genitive form. The suffixed ending **-ītis** is added to the initial root of the noun which defines the place of a morbid state. All the terms with the suffixed ending **-ītis** are nouns of the 3rd declension:

arthr- (joint) + **-ītis** → **arthrītis, itīdis f** — arthritis, inflammation of a joint;

hepat- (liver) + **-ītis** → **hepatītis, itīdis f** — hepatitis, inflammation of the liver.

The suffixed ending **-ītis** may be added both to the Greek and Latin roots:

nephr- (Greek *nephros* kidney) + **-ītis** → **nephrītis, itīdis f** — nephritis, an inflammatory disease of the kidney;

tonsill- (Latin *tonsilla*, ae f *tonsil*) + -ītis → **tonsillītis, itīdis f** — tonsillitis, an inflammation of the tonsil.

The site of the inflammatory process can be defined more precisely by means of the following prefixes of the Greek origin:

1) **endo-** (inner, mostly a mucous part of an organ):

endo- + metr- (utērus, i m) + -ītis → **endometrītis, itīdis f** — endometritis, an inflammation of the inner mucous membrane of the uterus.

2) **para-** (cellular, connective and other tissues near an organ):

para- + cyst- (urinary bladder) + -ītis → **paracystītis, itīdis f** — paracystitis, a condition of inflammation affecting the connective and other tissues lying close to the bladder.

3) **peri-** (tissues enclosing an organ):

peri- + card- (heart) + -ītis → **pericardītis, itīdis f** — pericarditis, an inflammation of the membrane enveloping the heart.

Names of some inflammatory morbid conditions are formed without suffixed ending -ītis, e. g.:

panaritium, i n — panaris (= panaritium), an inflammation in the nail fold;

phlegmōne, es f — phlegmon, inflammation of connective tissue without pus formation;

pneumonia, ae f — pneumonia, an inflammation of the spongy tissue of the lung.

§ 120. Names of pathological cavities

Abscesses, cysts and hernias usually belong to pathological cavities.

Abscess (**abscessus, us m**) is an accumulation of pus circumscribed in a cavity produced by tissue disintegration. This Latin noun is used mainly with adjectives:

abscessus apicālis — apical abscess, an abscess at the apex of the root of a tooth;

abscessus tonsillāris — tonsillar abscess, a suppurative condition of the parenchyma of a tonsil.

Cyst (**cysta, ae f**) is a cavity lined by a well-defined epithelium, fibrous or degenerating tissue. This noun both in Latin and English is mainly used in two-word terms with adjectives and nouns:

cysta choledōchi — choledochus cyst, cystic dilatation in the common bile duct;

cysta pancreatīca — pancreatic cyst, a cyst arising within or in close proximity to the pancreas.

Hernia (**hernia, ae f**) is the protrusion of an internal organ through a defect in the wall of the anatomical cavity in which it lies. The noun is used like the previous one with adjectives and nouns:

hernia cerēbri — hernia of the brain, protrusion of the brain through a defect in the skull;

hernia inguinālis — inguinal hernia, hernia in the inguinal canal.

In one-word terms, the idea of hernia is expressed by the final root **-cele**:
gastrocēle, es f — gasrocele, hernia of the stomach;
myocēle, es f — myocele, hernia of a muscle.

§ 121. Names of tumors

Names of tumors of a definite organ or tissues are formed by means of suffixed ending **-ōma** added to the initial root which indicates the localization of abnormal growth. All these names are nouns of the 3rd declension:

angiōma, ātis n — angioma, a tumor composed of blood vessels or of lymphatic vessels;

nephroōma, ātis n — nephroma, a tumor derived from renal substance;

osteōma, ātis n — osteoma, a tumor of bone.

Some names of innocent tumors are formed without the suffixed ending **-oma**:

polypus, i m — polypus, a tumor with a stalk arising from mucous membranes or the body surface;

verruca, ae f — a wart, a small circumscribed epidermal tumor.

Both nouns are used in multiword terms:

polypus laryngis — a polypus of larynx;

verruca plana — a plane wart.

A malignant tumor or any malignant growth is named cancer — **cancer, cri m**. This name is used with the nouns and adjectives which define localization of the tumor:

cancer cutis — cancer of the skin;

cancer gastris — cancer of the stomach.

A malignant epithelial tumor is called carcinoma — **carcinōma, ātis n**. This noun is used with adjectives mostly:

carcinōma bronchogenicum — a bronchogenic carcinoma, carcinoma originating from a bronchus;

carcinōma cutaneum — carcinoma cutaneum, a squamous-celled carcinoma of the skin.

The name *carcinoma* can also be used as a final root of one-word terms:

adenocarcinōma, ātis n — adenocarcinoma, a carcinomatous tumor of glandular epithelium and connective tissue;

chondrocarcinōma, ātis n — chondrocarcinoma, a carcinoma the fragment of which contains cartilaginous elements.

§ 122. Names of concrements

A concrement is a pathological concretion — mostly a small mass which has become calcified in a cavity or in the tissue of a hollow anatomical structure. Such a concretion is denoted in Latin by the nouns **concrementum, i n** or **calcūlus, i m** and an adjective defining the localization of the concretion:

concrementum nasāle — nasal calculus;

calcūlus dentālis — dental calculus.

The names of these concretions may also be expressed by one-word terms by means of the final root **-lithus** (Greek *lithos stone*) added to initial roots:

rhinolīthus, i m = concrementum nasāle;

odontolīthus, i m = calcūlus dentālis.

The condition in which a number of calculi are present in any part of the body is called calculus — **calculōsis, is f**. The formation of concretions is named lithiasis — **lithiāsis, is f**. The same word is used as a final root of several one-word terms:

broncholithiāsis, is f — broncholithiasis, a condition in which calculi occur in the lumina of bronchial tubes;

cholecystolithiāsis, is f — cholelithiasis, a condition in which there are gall-stones in the gall bladder or bile duct;

nephrolithāsis, is f — nephrolithiasis, a condition characterized by the presence of gravel or of renal calculi;

urolithiāsis, is f — urolithiasis, a morbid state due to the presence of calculi in the urinary system.

§ 123. Table of initial root elements

Greek initial roots and their variants	Latin equivalents in the dictionary form	English meaning	English word building elements
aden-	1) glandūla, ae f 2) adenoīdes, um f 3) nodus lymphaticus	1) gland 2) adenoids 3) lymphatic node	aden-
carcin-, -carcinōma	cancer, cri m	cancer	carcin-, -carcinoma
chole-	bilis, is f; fel, fellis n	bile	chole-
cholecyst-	vesīca biliāris (fellea)	gall bladder	cholecyst-
col-, -colon	1) intestīnum crassum 2) colon	1) large intestine 2) colon	col-, -colon
cyst-	1) saccus, i m 2) vesīca, ae f 3) vesīca urinaria	1) sac 2) bladder 3) urinary bladder	cyst-
dacry-	lacrīma, ae f	tear	dacry-
dacryocyst-	saccus lacrimālis	lacrimal sac	dacryocyst-
enter-	1) intestīnum tenue 2) intestīnum	1) small intestine 2) intestine	enter-
hist-	textus, us m	tissue	hist-
hyster-, metr-	utērus, i m	uterus	hyster-, metr-

Greek initial roots and their variants	Latin equivalents in the dictionary form	English meaning	English word building elements
lith-, -lithus	calcūlus, i m concrementum, i n	stone concretion	lith-, -lithus
lip-	adeps, ĩpis m	fatty tissue of the body	lip-
necr-, -necrōsis	mortuus, a, um	dead, lifeless	necr-, -necrosis
ne(o)-	novus, a, um	new	ne(o)-
onc-	tumor, ōris m	tumor, swelling	onc-
pan-, pant-	omnis, e	all	pan-, pant-
py-	pus, puris n	pus	py-
scler-, -sclerōsis	durus, a, um	hard, hardening	scler-, -sclerosis
sial-, -sialia	1) salīva, ae f 2) ductus salivarii	1) saliva 2) salivary ducts	sial-, -sialia
sten-, -stenōsis	strictus, a, um	narrow, narrowing	sten-, -stenōsis
ur-	1) urea, ae f 2) urīna, ae f	1) urea, the chief nitrogenous constituent of urine 2) urine	ur-
uran-	palātum, i n	palate	palat-, uran-

§ 124. Table of final root elements

Final root elements	English meaning
-cele	hernia
-lithiāsis	the formation of concretions
-rrhagia	haemorrhage (bleeding) in any part of the body
-rrhoea	profuse discharge of mucus or other fluid substance
-salivatio	secretion of saliva
-schīsis	congenital fissure of a tissue
-stāsis	cessation of the flow of any physiological fluid
-uria	any condition of the urine

Attention! Instead of the initial Greek root **uran-** the Latin root **palat-** can be used:

palatoplegia, ae f (palatoplegia, paralysis affecting the soft palate) = uranoplegia, ae f (uranoplegia);

palatoschīsis, is f (palatoschisis, cleft palate, a congenital fissure in the midline of the hard palate) = uranoschīsis, is f (uranoschisis).

§ 125. Exercises

1. Complete (orally) the dictionary form of each Latin noun and define the meaning of each word building element. Write down in English a full definition of each term and its English one-word equivalent:

adenalgia; adenocarcinōma; broncholithiāsis; carcinomatōsis; cheilocarcinoma; cheilognathoschīsis; cholecystītis; dacryostenōsis; empyēma; endophthalmītis; enterocolītis; gastrocēle; gnathoschīsis; histolýsis; hyposalivatio; lipuria; lymphostāsis; megalodontia; myocēle; neoplasma; nephrolithiāsis;

odontolĭthus; oncolōgus; osteonecrōsis; palatoplegia; periodontĭtis; panalgia; pyogēnus; uraemia; uranoschĭsis.

2. Make up the Latin dictionary form of one-word terms with the following meaning:

abnormal narrowing of the internal diameter of a vessel; calculus on the teeth; causing the growth of tumors; the discharge of mucus, pus or blood from eye; a discharge of pus; hardening of bony spaces; formation and development of body tissue; the formation of concretions; inflammation of the inner mucous membrane of the uterus; inflammation of the liver; narrowing or stricture of the duct of the lacrimal gland; paralysis affecting the soft palate; profuse discharge of mucous fluid from the nose; the presence of blood in the urine; the production of urinary calculi and the morbid state due to the presence of calculi in the urinary system.

3. Give the Latin dictionary form and the full definition of each term in English:

angioma; calculosis; cancerogenic (= carcinogenic); carcinoma; cheilognathopalatoschisis (=cheilognatouranoschisis); cystitis; dacryorrhoea; dropsy; endometritis; enterogastritis; gingivitis; gnathoschisis; hypersalivation; lymphangiitis; oncologist; oncotherapy; parotitis; pericystitis; polyposis; sialolith; tonsillitis.

4. Give the Latin dictionary form and translate into English (A) and into Latin (B):

A. Labium leporĭnum sive fissum; rhagādes labii inferiōris; calcūlus supragingivālis; cancer tunĭcae mucōsae oris; polypōsis laryngis; verrūcae planae; status textuum praecancerōsus; phlegmōne cavitātis oris.

B. Simple odontome; arthritis of temporomandibular joint; nasolabial cyst; submandibular adenitis; abscess of hard palate; implantation of inferior canine tooth; verrucose precancer; aphthous recurrent stomatitis.

§ 126. Vocabulary to lesson 16

I. Latin-English vocabulary

achlorhydria, ae f	achlorhydria, a complete lack of free hydrochloric acid in the gastric juice
adenalgia, ae f	adenalgia, a painful condition of a gland
adenocarcinōma, ātis n	adenocarcinoma, a carcinomatous tumor of glandular epithelium and connective tissue
amenorrhoea, ae f	amenorrhoea, the pathological absence or stoppage of the menstrual discharge from the uterus
broncholithiāsĭs, is f	broncholithiasis, a condition in which calculi occur in the lumina of bronchial tubes
cancer, cri m	cancer
carcinomatōsis, is f	carcinomatosis, the condition in which carcinoma is widely distributed throughout the body

calcūlus, i m	calculus, a solid pathological concretion, usually of inorganic mater, formed in any part of the body
cheilocarcinōma, ātis n	cheilocarcinoma, carcinoma of the lip
cheilognathoschīsis, is f	cheilognathoschisis, hare-lip in which the cleft involves the jaw as well the lip
cholecystītis, itīdis f	cholecystitis, inflammation of the gall bladder
dacryostenōsis, is f	dacryostenosis, narrowing or stricture of the duct of the lacrimal gland
empyēma, ātis n	empyema, an accumulation of pus in a cavity
endophthalmītis, itīdis f	endophthalmitis, a suppurative inflammation of the interior of the eyeball
enterocolītis, itīdis f	enterocolitis, an inflamed condition of the small intestine and the colon
fissus, a, um (labium)	splintered (lip), hare-lip
gastrocēle, es f	gastrocele, hernia of the stomach or of a portion which has become pouched
gnathoschīsis, is f	gnathoschisis, a congenital fissure of the maxilla, such as is present in cleft palate
hidradenītis, itīdis f	hidradenitis, inflammation of the sweat glands
histolýsis, is f	histolysis, spontaneous breaking-down or dissolution of living organic tissue
hyposalivatio, ōnis f	hyposalivation, a condition in which there is an abnormal decrease in secretion of saliva
leporīnus, a, um	belonging to the hare (lip)
lipuria, ae f	lipuria, the presence of an oily emulsion or fat in the urine
lymphostāsis, is f	lymphostasis, cessation of the flow of lymph
megalodontia, ae f	megalodontia, a condition in which the teeth are excessively large
mucōsus, a, um	mucous
myocēle, es f	myocele, herniation of a muscle
neoplasma, ātis n	neoplasm, any new and morbid formation of tissue
nephrolithiāsis, is f	nephrolithiasis, a condition characterized by the presence of gravel or of renal calculi
odontolīthus, i m	odontolith, calculus on the teeth
oncolōgus, i m	oncologist, medical specialist, treating tumorous diseases
osteonecrōsis, is f	osteonecrosis, death of bony tissue
palatoplegia, ae f	palatoplegia, paralysis affecting the soft palate
pantalgia, ae f	pantalgia, pain affecting all parts of the body
periodontītis, itīdis f	periodontitis, inflammation of the periodontal membrane
phlegmōne, es f	phlegmon, inflammation of the tissue without pus formation
planus, a, um	plane
polypōsis, is f	polyposis, condition in which there are many polypi growing from the mucous membrane
praecancerōsus, a, um	precancerous, relating or belonging to the stage in which a precancer develops, before the growth has become malignant
pyogēnus, a, um	pyogenic, forming or producing pus
rhagas, ādis f (plur. rhagādes, um f)	rhagades, fissures, chaps, or cracks at the angle of the mouth
sive	or
status, us m	state

supragingivālis, e	supragingival
textus, us m	tissue
tunīca, ae f	1) layer, coat 2) membrane
uraemia, ae f	uraemia, a condition caused by retention of metabolic products in the blood and disturbance of acid-base ratio of the latter
uranoschīsis, is f (=palatoschīsis, is f)	uranoschisis (=palatoschisis), cleft palate, a congenital fissure in the midline of the hard palate
verrūca, ae f	wart, a circumscribed, cutaneous excrescence having a papilliferous surface

II. English-Latin vocabulary

abnormal narrowing of the internal diameter of a vessel,	angiostenōsis, is f
angiostenosis	angiōma, ātis n
angioma, a tumor composed of blood vessels	aphthōsus, a, um
aphthous	
calculosis, a condition in which a number of calculi are present in any part of the body	calculōsis, is f
calculus of the teeth, odontolith	odontolīhus, i m
cancerogenic (= carcinogenic), producing carcinoma	cancerogēnus, a, um
carcinoma, a malignant epithelial tumor	carcinōma, ātis n
causing the growth of tumors, oncogenous	oncogēnus, a, um
cheilognathopalatoschisis (=cheilognathouranoschisis), the condition of having both hare-lip and cleft palate	cheilognathopalatoschīsis, is f (=cheilognathouranoschīsis, is f)
cystitis, inflammation of the urinary bladder	cystītis, itīdis f
dacryorrhoea, an excessive flow of the tears	dacryorrhoea, ae f
the discharge of mucus, pus or blood from eye,	
ophthalmorrhoea	ophthalmorrhoea, ae f
a discharge of pus, pyorrhoea	pyorrhoea, ae f
dropsy, an abnormal collection of fluid in tissue or cavity space	hydrops, ōpis m
enterogastritis, an inflammation of the small intestine and the stomach	enterogastrītis, itīdis f
formation and development of body tissue, histogenesis	histogenēsis, is f
gingivitis, inflammation of the gingival margins around the teeth	gingivītis, itīdis f
gnathoschisis, a congenital fissure in the maxilla such as is present in cleft palate	gnathoschīsis, is f
hardening of bony spaces, osteosclerosis	osteosclerōsis, is f
hypersalivation, excessive secretion of saliva	hypersalivatio, ōnis f
inflammation of the inner mucous membrane of the uterus, endometritis	endometrītis, itīdis f
inflammation of the liver, hepatitis	hepatītis, itīdis f
lymphangiitis, inflammation of lymphatic vessels	lymphangiītis, itīdis f
lymphocytosis, an increase in the number of lymphocytes	lymphocytōsis, is f
narrowing or stricture of the duct of the lacrimal gland, dacryostenosis	dacryostenōsis, is f
oncologist, medical specialist treating tumorous diseases	oncolōgus, i m
oncotherapy, the treatment of tumorous diseases	oncotherapia, ae f
paralysis affecting the soft palate, palatoplegia	palatoplegia, ae f

parotitis, an inflammatory state of the parotid gland	parotītis , itīdis f
recurrent	recurrens, ntis
the presence of blood in the urine, haematuria	haematuria, ae f
profuse discharge of mucous fluid from the nose, rhinorrhoea	rhinorrhoea, ae f
the production of urinary calculi and the morbid state due to the presence of calculi in the urinary system, urolithiasis	urolithiāsīs, is f
sialolith, a salivary calculus	sialolīthus, i m
a sudden blocking of a blood vessel, usually an artery, by emboli, thromboembolia (thromboembolism)	thromboēmbolia, ae f (thromboēmbolismus, i m)
tonsillitis, inflammation of the tonsill	tonsillītis, itīdis f

§ 127. Model (Sample) of the final test on clinical terminology

1. Give Greek initial roots and Latin equivalents (in the dictionary form) with the following meaning:

1) blood 2) cell 3) black 4) kidney 5) tissue

2. Compose one-word terms in the dictionary form with the following meaning:

1) medical specialist treating tumorous diseases 2) any new and morbid formation of tissue 3) forming or producing pus 4) a red blood cell that is larger than normal 5) a state in which most of the teeth are lacking

3. Write down in the dictionary form the Latin equivalents of the following terms and give the full definition of each term:

1) erythema 2) iatrogenic 3) macrocyte 4) phthisiologist 5) stomatitis

4. Write down the dictionary form and translate into English:

1) arthritis of temporomandibular joint 2) comatose state 3) denudation of the tooth cervix 4) viral and bacterial infections 5) rupture of nasal septum

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

A

abscessus, us m abscess, an accumulation of pus circumscribed in a cavity produced by tissue disintegration
actinomycōsis, is f actinomycosis, an infective disease, caused by *Actinomyces israeli*
acquisītus, a, um acquired
acūtus, a, um acute
adenalgia, ae f adenalgia, a painful condition of a gland
adenocarcinōma, ātis n adenocarcinoma, a carcinomatous tumor of glandular epithelium and connective tissue
aliēnus, a, um foreign
allergīcus, a, um allergic
alopecia, ae f alopecia, loss of hair
amnesia, ae f amnesia, loss of memory of varying degree
anaemia, ae f an(a)emia, a condition of the blood in which there are quantitative and qualitative changes in the red cells and haemoglobin
anaesthesia, ae f anaesthesia, loss of feeling or sensation in some part of the body due to nervous lesion or a local anesthetic agent
anaesthesiolōgus, i m anaesthesiologist, medical specialist in the administration of anesthetics
angiopathia, ae f angiopathy, any disease of blood vessels
anthropogēnus, a, um anthropogenic, caused by human activities
anthropologia, ae f anthropology, science studying the man in the process of his evolution
anthropolōgus, i m anthropologist, specialist studying the man in the process of his evolution
apodia, ae f apodia, congenital absence of feet
arteria, ae f artery
asthenia, ae f asthenia, loss of vital forces

atrophia, ae f atrophy, a condition of general malnutrition from whatever cause
autohaemotherapia, ae f
autohaemotherapy, a method of treatment in which the patient's own blood is administered to him

B

bacteriālis, e bacterial, originating or derived from, belonging to or consisting of bacteria
benignus, a, um benign
biologia, ae f biology, science studying forms of life and living organisms
blepharītis, itīdis f blepharitis, inflammation of the eyelids
blepharoplastīca, ae f blepharoplasty, a plastic operation to restore an eyelid
brachydactylia, ae f brachydactylia, a condition in which there are abnormally short fingers or toes
bradyphagia, ae f bradyphagia, slowing of swallowing
bradypnoē, ēs f bradypnoea, an abnormally slow rate of breathing
broncholithiāsis, is f broncholithiasis, the condition in which calculi occur in the lumen of bronchial tubes
bucca, ae f cheek

C

cadāver, ěris n a corpse; a lifeless human body
calcūlus, i m calculus, a solid pathological concretion, usually of inorganic matter, formed in any part of the body
cancer, cri m cancer
carcinōma, ātis n carcinoma, a malignant epithelial tumor
carcinomatōsis, is f carcinomatosis, the condition in which carcinoma is widely distributed throughout the body
cardiogēnus, a, um cardiogenic, arising because of the heart
cardiolōgus, i m cardiologist, medical specialist treating heart diseases

caries, ēi f caries, a gradual decay of death of bone as a result of chronic infection
cariōsus, a, um carious, affected with caries
cerēbrum, i n cerebrum
cervix, īcis f cervix
cheilocarcinōma, ātis n cheilocarcinoma, carcinoma of the lip
cheilognathoschīsis, is f cheilognathoschisis, hare-lip in which the cleft involves the jaw as well as the lip
cholecystītis, itīdis f cholecystitis, inflammation of the gall bladder
chondropathia, ae f chondropathy, any disease affecting a cartilage
chronīcus, a, um chronic, long continued
combustio, ōnis f combustion, burn, an injury caused by heat or by chemical or physical agents having an effect similar to heat
commotio, ōnis f concussion, a violent shaking of a structure
congelatio, ōnis f congelation, frostbite, a local morbid condition caused by freezing
congenītus, a, um congenital
continuus, a, um continued
cor, cordis n heart
cornea, ae f cornea
corpus, ōris n body
craniometria, ae f craniometry, measurement of the skull
cryotherapia, ae f cryotherapy, the science of the use of cold as a therapeutic measure
cuneiformis, e cuneiform
curatio, ōnis f medical treatment
cysta, ae f cyst, a cavity lined by an inflamed or neoplastic tissue
cystorrhagia, ae f cystorrhagia, haemorrhage from the urinary bladder

D

dacryostenōsis, is f dacryostenosis, narrowing or stricture of the duct of the lacrimal gland
dactylospasmus, i m dactylospasm, spasmodic contraction of a finger or toe

defectus, us m defect
deformans, ntis deforming
dentālis, e dental
dentinogenēsis, is f dentinogenesis, the formation and development of the dentine by the odontoblasts
dermatomycōsis, is f dermatomycosis, a generic term for all cutaneous infections due to fungi
dermatōsis, is f dermatosis, any disease of the skin
dexter, tra, trum right
diabētes, ae m diabetes, anyone of a group of diseases in which there is polyuria and a disturbed metabolism
diabetīcus, a, um diabetic, relating to diabetes
diagnōsis, is f diagnosis, medical denotion of the disease from which a person suffers
digītus, i m finger, toe
dolichocephalia, ae f dolichocephalia, the state of having a relatively long skull
duodēnum, i n duodenum
dysgeusia, ae f dysgeusia, impairment or perversion of the sense of taste
dysplasia, ae f dysplasia, abnormal development of tissue
dysthyreōsis, is f dysthyreosis, imperfect functioning of the thyroid gland

E

embryologia, ae f embryology, the branch of biological science which is concerned with the origin and development of the embryo from the ovum to the stage of extrauterine life
empyēma, ātis n empyema, a collection of pus in a cavity
encephalogramma, ātis n encephalogram, any X-ray film obtained in the radiological examination of the ventricles and subarachnoid space of the brain
endophthalmītis, itīdis f endophthalmitis, a suppurative inflammation of the interior of eyeball

enterocolītis, itīdis f enterocolitis, an inflamed condition of the small intestine and the colon
erosio, ōnis f erosion, any superficial destructive process
erythropenia, ae f erythropenia, a state in which there are too few erythrocytes
exacerbacio, ōnis f exacerbation, increase in severity of a disease
extractio, ōnis f extraction, the act or process of drawing out a part of body or foreign body

F

faciālis, e facial
facies, ēi f face
febris, is f fever
fissus, a, um splintered (lip)
fistūla, ae f fistula, an unnatural communication between an organ and the body surface
f(o)etor, ōris m fetor, a foul odour or stench
fractūra, ae f fracture

G

gaster, tris f stomach
gastrocēle, es f gastrocele, hernia of the stomach or of a portion which has become pouched
gastrospasmus, i m gastrospasm, an involuntary contraction of the stomach muscle
gastrostōma, ātis n gastrostoma, natural or artificial gastric fistula
gingivālis, e gingival
gingivītis, itīdis f gingivitis, inflammation of the gingival margins around the teeth, manifested by swelling and bleeding
glandŭla, ae f gland
glossoplegia, ae f glossoplegia, paralysis of the tongue
glycaemia, ae f glycaemia, a condition in which the circulating blood contains a quantity of sugar above normal amounts
gnathoschīsis, is f gnathoschisis, a congenital fissure of the maxilla, such as is present in cleft palate
gradus, us m grade

granulōma, ātis n granuloma, a tumour composed of granulation tissue
gravīda, ae f gravida, a woman who is pregnant
gynaecolōgus, i m gynecologist, medical specialist treating genital diseases in women

H

haemarthrōsis, is f haemarthrosis, extravasation of blood into a joint
haematologia, ae f haematology, branch of medicine studying blood and its diseases
halitōsis, is f halitosis, fetid or offensive breath
hemicrania, ae f hemicrania, a periodic morbid condition with localized headaches
hemiplegia, ae f hemiplegia, paralysis of one half of the body
hepar, ātis n liver
herpes, ētis m herpes, inflammation of the skin or mucous membrane, with clusters of deep-seated vesicles
hidradenītis, itīdis f hidradenitis, inflammation of the sweat glands
histolŷsis, is f histolysis, spontaneous dissolution of living organic tissue
hyperaemia, ae f hyperaemia, an excess of blood in any part of the body
hyperthermia, ae f hyperthermia, very high body temperature
hypertrophia, ae f hypertrophy, an increase in the number or size of the cells of which a tissue is composed as the result of increase in function of that tissue
hypoplasia, ae f hypoplasia, defective formation or underdevelopment of a tissue or part
hyposalivatio, ōnis f hyposalivation, a condition in which there is abnormal decrease in the secretion of saliva
hypotonia, ae f hypotonia, lessened tension in any body structure

I

iatrogēnus, a, um iatrogenic, happening because of the physician's manner or injudicious remarks

immunodeficientia, ae f
immunodeficiency

imperfectus, a, um incomplete

icisīvus, a, um (dens) incisor (tooth)

indigestio, ōnis f indigestion, any disturbance of the normal process of digestion

infarctus, us m infarct, a wedge-shaped area of dead tissue, with or without haemorrhage, produced by the obstruction of an end artery

infectio, ōnis f infection, the invasion of a pathogenic organism into the body and its subsequent multiplication

inflammatio, ōnis f inflammation

insufficiētia, ae f insufficiency, the state of being inadequate to perform normal function

intraorālis, e intraoral

K

keratotomia, ae f keratotomy, making an incision into the cornea

L

labiālis, e labial

larynx, yngis m larynx

latens, ntis hidden

leporīnus, a, um belonging to the hare (lip)

leucocytōsis, is f leucocytōsis, an increase in the total number of leucocytes in the blood

ligamentum, i n ligament

lingua, ae f tongue

lipuria, ae f lipuria, the presence of an oily emulsion or fat in the urine

lumbālis, e lumbal

luxatio, ōnis f luxation, dislocation

lymphostāsis, is f lymphostasis, cessation of the flow of lymph

M

maculōsus, a, um maculate, marked by maculae

mandibūla, ae f mandible

massēter, ēris m masseter (muscle)

megacōlon, i n megacolon, a condition in which there is great dilatation of the large intestine

megalodontia, ae f megalodontia, a condition in which the teeth are excessively large

melanoderma, ātis n melanoderma, a condition in which there is an unusually large accumulation of melanin in the skin

mellītus, a, um (diabētes) mellitus (diabetes), characterized by a high-fasting blood sugar

metamorphōsis, is f metamorphosis, change of form or structure

microcheilia, ae f microcheilia, a condition in which the lips are abnormally small

microgenia, ae f microgenia, a condition in which the chin is of unusually small size

micromyelia, ae f micromyelia, general reduction in size of the spinal cord

mobilitas, ātis f mobility

monodactylismus, i m monodactylism, a congenital condition in which one finger or toe only is present on the hand or the foot

morbis, i m disease

mucōsus, a, um mucous

myelitis, itidis f myelitis, inflammation of bone marrow

myocēle, es f myocele, hernia of a muscle

myoplegia, ae f myoplegia, paralysis of muscle or a condition in which is decreased muscular force

myotomia, ae f myotomy, the dissection of a muscle or of muscle tissue

N

neoplasma, ātis n neoplasm, any new and morbid formation of tissue

nephrolithiāsis, is f nephrolithiasis, a condition characterized by the presence of gravel or of renal calculi

nervus, i m nerve

neuralgia, ae f neuralgia, a painful affection of the nerves, due to functional disturbances or to neuritis
neurītis, itīdis f neuritis, inflammation of a nerve
neuropatholōgus, i m neuropathologist, medical specialist treating diseases of nervous system

O

occipitālis, e occipital
ocūlus, i m eye
odontolīthus, i m odontolith, calculus on the teeth
odontogenēsis, is f odontogenesis, the origin and formative development of teeth
odontogēnus, a, um odontogenic, relating to the development of the teeth
odontogramma, ātis n odontogram, X-ray film of the tooth
odontolīthus, i m odontolith, calculus of the teeth
odontoscopia, ae f odontology, instrumental-visual examination of the tooth
oligocytaemia, ae f oligocytaemia, a condition in the blood in which there is cell deficiency
oligodentia, ae f (= oligodontia, ae f) oligodontia (oligodontia), a state in which most of the teeth are lacking
oligophrenia, ae f oligophrenia, congenital lack of the mentality
oncolōgus, i m oncologist, medical specialist treating tumorous diseases
ophthalmoscopia, ae f ophthalmoscopy, instrumental-visual examination of the eye
os, oris n mouth
osteōma, ātis n osteoma, an innocent tumor of bone
osteonecrōsis, is f osteonecrosis, death of bony tissue
osteopathia, ae f osteopathia, disease of bones

osteoporōsis, is f osteoporosis, rarefaction of bone
otorhinolaryngologia, ae f otorhinolaryngology, branch of medicine for treating diseases of ear, nose and larynx

P

palatoplegia, ae f palatoplegia, paralysis affecting the soft palate
pantalgia, ae f (=panalgia, ae f) pantalgia, pain affecting all parts of the body
parodontōsis, is f (=periodontōsis, is f) parodontosis, any degenerative change occurring in alveolar periosteum
periodontītis, itīdis f periodontitis, inflammation of the periodontal membrane
pes, pedis m leg
phlebocarcinōma, ātis n phlebocarcinoma, a malignant epithelial tumor affecting a vein
phlegmōne, es f phlegmon, inflammation of connective tissue without pus formation
photophobia, ae f photophobia, abnormal intolerance to light
phthysiāter, tri m phthisiologist, medical specialist treating tuberculosis
physiologia, ae f physiology, science studying normal vital processes in human body
phytotherapia, ae f phytotherapy, method of treatment by means of medicinal plants
planus, a, um plane
plicātus, a, um plicate, folded
polymastia, ae f polymastia, the state in which in human beings there are more than two distinct mammary glands
polypōsis, is f polyposis, a condition in which there are many polypi growing from the mucous membrane
polypus, i m polyp, a tumor with a stalk arising from mucous membranes or the body surface
polyuria, ae f polyuria, increase in the amount of the excreted urine

praecancerōsus, a, um precancerous, relating or belonging to the stage in which a precancer develops, before the growth has become malignant

premolāris, e (dens) premolar (tooth)

primus, a, um first

proctolōgus, i m proctologist, medical specialist treating diseases of rectum

profundus, a, um deep

prognathia, ae f prognatism, a condition in which there is abnormal projection of one or both jaws

prophylaxis, is f prophylaxis, the art of preventing disease

pseudarthrōsis, is f pseudarthrosis, a false joint formed between the fragments of a fractured bone which have failed to unite

psychiatria, ae f psychiatry, branch of medicine treating mental diseases

psychōsis, is f psychosis, any kind of mental disorder

pyogēnus, a, um pyogenic, forming or producing pus

R

radiculāris, e radicular

rectum, i n rectum

renālis, e renal

resectio, ōnis f resection, surgical removal of a part of an anatomical structure

rhagas, ādis f; usually rhagādes, um f (plur.) rhagades, fissures, chaps, or cracks at the angle of the mouth

rhinogramma, ātis n rhinogram, X-ray film of the nose

ruptūra, ae f rupture, the breaking or forcible disruption of continuity of the bone or an other structure

S

salivarius, a, um salivary

sarcōma, ātis n sarcoma, a malignant tumor of connective tissue or its derivatives

sectio, ōnis f section, the act of cutting

senīlis, e senile

simplex, ĭcis simple

situs, us m site, position

sive or

spasmophilia, ae f spasmophilia, a morbid state in which there is a tendency to convulsions and spasm

spasmus, i m spasm, a sudden, powerful, involuntary contraction of muscle

splenomegalia, ae f splenomegalia, enlargement of the spleen

spondylītis, itīdis f spondilitis, inflammation of the spine

spongiōsus, a, um spongy (spongius), full of small holes, like a sponge

stomatomycōsis, is f stomatocycosis, any morbid condition of the oral cavity caused by a microscopical fungus

stomatoscopia, ae f stomatoscopy, visual-instrumental examination of the oral cavity

suppuratīvus, a, um suppurative, pus-forming, having a tendency toward suppuration

supragingivālis, e supragingival

syndrōmum, i n syndrome, a distinct group of signs which form a characteristic clinical picture of the disease

T

tachycardia, ae f tachycardia, rapid action of the heart

tenorrhaphia, ae f tenorrhaphy, an operation for the suturing of the divided ends of a tendon

tenotomia, ae f tenotomy, the cutting of a tendon

textus, us m tissue

thermotherapia, ae f thermotherapy, the use of heat in the treatment of disease

thromboticus, a, um thrombotic, characterized or caused by thrombosis

thyroideus, a, um thyroid

thyr(e)otoxicōsis, is f thyrotoxicosis, any toxic condition attributable to hyperactivity of the thyroid gland

toxicomania, ae f toxicomania, an insane desire for poison

toxicōsis, is f toxicosis, the pathological condition caused by the adsorption of poison

transplantātum, i n transplant, a piece of tissue to transfer from one site to another

traumatīcus, a, um traumatic

trismus, i m trismus, inability to open the mouth due to tonic contracture of the muscles of the jaw

tuberculōsis, is f tuberculosis

tunīca, ae f 1) layer, coat 2) membrane

U

ulcerōsus, a, um ulcerous, having the characteristics of an ulcer

ulcus, ěris n ulcer, a localized necrotic lesion of the skin or a mucous surface

unguis, is m nail

uraemia, ae f uraemia, the condition which is associated with the retention of metabolic products in the blood and disturbance of acid-base ratio of the latter

uranoschĭsis, is f (=palatoschĭsis, is f) uranoschisis (palatoschisis), cleft palate, a congenital fissure in the midline of the hard palate

utĕrus, i m uterus

V

venōsus, a, um venous

verrūca, ae f wart, a circumscribed, cutaneous excrescence having a papilliferous surface

verus, a, um true

viscus, ěris n; usually viscĕra, um n

(**plur.**) viscera, the internal organs of the body which are closely related to the great serous cavities: pleural, pericardial or peritoneal

vitium, i n vitium, a defect or a vice

X

xerophthalmia, ae f xerophthalmia

(=xeroma), a morbid condition of eyes characterized by a shrunken appearance of the conjunctiva

Z

zoster, ěris m zoster

ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY

A

abnormal narrowing of the internal diameter of a vessel, angiostenosis angiostenōsis, is f
abnormal narrowing of the mouth, stenostomy stenostomia, ae f
abnormal quickness in eating, tachyphagia tachyphagia, ae f
abnormally rapid breathing, tachypnoea tachypnoë, ës f
abnormal sluggishness of physical movements, bradykinesia bradykinesia, ae f
abscess, an accumulation of pus circumscribed in a cavity produced by tissue disintegration abscessus, us m
acquired acquisītus, a, um
actinomycosis, an infective disease, caused by Actinomyces israeli actinomycōsis, is f
the act or process of drawing out a part of body or a foreign body, extraction extractio, ōnis f
acute acūtus, a, um
adiponecrosis, necrosis affecting the fatty tissue of the body adiponecrōsis, is f
aglossia, the congenital condition of being without a tongue aglossia, ae f
alimentary alimentarius, a, um
allergic allergīcus, a, um
amputation, the surgical removal of a limb or a portion of a limb or of any other appendage amputatio, ōnis f
an(a)emia, changes in the red cells resulting in a reduction in the total amount of blood anaemia, ae f
angiology, the science of the blood vessels angiologia, ae f
angioma, a tumor composed of blood vessels or of lymphatic vessels angiōma, ātis n
anthropologist, specialist studying the man in the process of his evolution anthropolōgus, i m

any disease affecting a joint, arthropathy arthropathia, ae f
any disease of skin, dermatosis dermatōsis, is f
any kind of pain affecting a joint, arthralgia arthralgia, ae f
any morbid condition of the nose, rhinopathy rhinopathia, ae f
any morbid condition or abnormal growth of the hair, trichopathy trichopathia, ae f
aortic aortīcus, a, um
apn(o)ea, the cessation in breathing apnoë, ës f
aphthous apthōsus, a, um
arthralgia, any kind of pain affecting a joint arthralgia, ae f
atrachia, not having hair atrichia, ae f
atrophy, a condition of general malnutrition from whatever cause atrophia, ae f
atypical atypīcus, a, um

B

bacterial bacteriālis, e
benign benignus, a, um
biopharmaceutics, study of physical and chemical properties of medicinal substances biopharmaceutīca, ae f
bladder vesīca, ae f
blepharotomy, incision of an eyelid blepharotomia, ae f
bradycardia, slowing of the heart rate bradycardia, ae f
bradyphagia, slowing of swallowing bradyphagia, ae f
branch of clinical medicine treating rectum diseases, proctology proctologia, ae f
branch of clinical medicine treating diseases of children, paediatrics paediatra, ae f
breast mamma, ae f
bronchitis, an inflamed condition of the bronchi bronchītis, itīdis f

burn, an injury caused by heat or by chemical or physical agents having an effect similar to heat combustio, ōnis f

C

calculosis, the condition in which a number of calculi are present in any part of the body calculōsis, is f
calculus (plur. calculi), a solid pathological concretion calcūlus, i m
calculus on the teeth, odontolith odontolīthus, i m
cancerogenic (= carcinogenic), producing carcinoma cancerogēnus, a, um
carcinoma, a malignant epithelial tumor carcinōma, ātis n
a carcinomatous tumor of glandular epithelium and connective tissue, adenocarcinoma adenocarcinōma, ātis n
cardinal cardinālis, e
cardiogram 1) result of X-ray examination of the heart 2) graphical picture of heart action cardiogramma, ātis n
cardiography 1) X-ray examination of the heart 2) graphical recording of heart action cardiographia, ae f
causing the growth of tumors, oncogenous oncogēnus, a, um
cephalalgia, pain in the head cephalalgia, ae f
cerebral cerebrālis, e
cervix cervix, īcis f
changes in the red cells resulting in a reduction in the total amount of blood, an(a)emia anaemia, ae f
cheilognathopalatoschisis (=cheilognathouranoschisis), the condition of having both hare-lip and cleft palate cheilognathopalatoschīsis, is f (=cheilognathouranoschīsis, is f)
chemical chemīcus, a, um
cholecystolithiasis, the condition in which there are gall-stones in the gall bladder or bile duct cholecystolithiāsis, is f

a chronic disease of the skin, characterized by the appearance of laminated scales, psoriasis psoriāsis, is f
chronic, long continued chronīcus, a, um
closed clausus, a, um
coma, the state of complete loss of consciousness from which the patient cannot be roused by any ordinary external stimulus coma, ātis n
comatose, affected with coma comatōsus, a, um
composite composītus, a, um
concussion, a violent shaking of a soft structure commotio, ōnis f
a condition characterized by the presence of gravel or of renal calculi, nephrolithiasis nephrolithiāsis, is f
a condition in which the ability to swallow is lacking, aphagia aphagia, ae f
a condition in which there are abnormally short fingers or toes, brachydactylia brachydactylia, ae f
a condition of enlargement of the liver, hepatomegalia hepatomegalia, ae f
cystitis, inflammation of the urinary bladder cystītis, itīdis f
cytology, the science of the form and functions of cells cytologia, ae f

D

dacryorrhoea, an excessive flow of tears dacryorrhoea, ae f
deficiency deficientia, ae f
denudation, the state of being deprived of a protecting layer or covering denudatio, ōnis f
dermatitis, inflammation of the skin dermatītis, itīdis f
devitalized, deprived of life or vitalizing properties devitalisātus, a, um
diabetic, related to diabetes diabetīcus, a, um
diastema, a pronounced gap between the lateral incisors, diastēma, ātis n
dilatation of the stomach, gastrectasia gastrectasia, ae f

direct directus, a, um
a discharge of pus, pyorrhoea pyorrhoea, ae f
dropsy, the abnormal accumulation of fluid in tissue or cavity space hydrops, ōpis m
dysplasia, abnormal development of tissue dysplasia, ae f
dystonia, a state of disordered tonicity dystonia, ae f
dystrophy, a disorder of the structure and functions of an organ or tissue due to perverted nutrition dystrophia, ae f

E

eczema, a nocontagious inflammatory disease of the skin with much itching and burning eczēma, ātis n
empyema, an accumulation of pus in a cavity, empyēma, ātis n
emphysema, a condition in which the alveoli of the lungs are dilated emphysēma, ātis n
encephalopathy, any morbid condition of the brain encephalopathia, ae f
endogenous, having origin within the organism endogēnus, a, um
endometritis, an inflammation of the inner mucous membrane of the uterus endometrītis, itīdis f
enophthalmus, recession of the eyeball into the cavity of the orbit enophthalmus, i m
enteritis, inflammation of the mucous membrane of the intestines enterītis, itīdis f
enterogastritis, inflammation of the small intestine and the stomach enterogastrītis, itīdis f
enteromegalia, an unusually large size of the intestine enteromegalia, ae f
the entrance and establishment of parasites into the body of a host, invasion invasio, ōnis f
erythema, redness of the skin due to hyperaemia erythēma, ātis n

excessive sensitiveness of any organ or part of the body, hyperaesthesia hyperaesthesia, ae f
exogenous, belonging to aetiological factors outside the organism exogēnus, a, um
extremely rapid breathing, tachypnoea tachypnoë, ës f
eye oculus, i m

F

false falsus, a, um
femur femur, ōris n
fever febris, is f
fibroma, an innocent tumor composed chiefly of connective tissue fibrōma, ātis n
fibrous fibrōsus, a, um
formation and development of body tissue, histogenesis histogenēsis, is f
the formation of concretions, lithiasis lithiāsis, is f
fracture, a break in the continuity of a bone fractūra, ae f
frenulum frenūlum, i n
functional functionālis, e

G

gall (+ noun) felleus, a, um (biliāris, e)
gall bladder vesīca fellea (biliāris)
gerontology, science studying living processes in the aged gerontologia, ae f
gingival gingivālis, e
gland glandūla, ae f
glaucoma, a condition of increased intraocular pressure and its consequences glaucōma, ātis n
glossitis, inflammation of the tongue glossītis, itīdis f
glossotomy, dissection of the tongue glossotomia, ae f
gnathalgia, pain in one or both jaws gnathalgia, ae f
gnathoschisis, a congenital fissure in the maxilla gnathoschīsis, is f
goitre, an enlargement of the thyroid gland struma, ae f

H

haematology, branch of medicine studying blood and its diseases haematologia, ae f
haemogram, results of quantitative and qualitative examination of blood haemogramma, ātis n
haemophilia, a severe hereditary bleeding disease affecting males and transmitted by females haemophilia, ae f
halitosis, fetid or offensive breath halitōsis, is f
hand manus, us f
hard durus, a, um
hardening of bony spaces, osteosclerosis osteosclerōsis, is f
hemiatrophy, atrophy affecting only one side of the body, or a half of an organ hemiatrophia, ae f
hepatic hepaticus, a, um
hepatitis, inflammation of the liver hepatītis, itīdis f
hepatomegalia, a condition of enlargement of the liver hepatomegalia, ae f
hereditary hereditarius, a, um
hyperaesthesia, excessive sensitiveness of any organ or part of the body hyperaesthesia, ae f
hyperglycaemia, an excessive amount of sugar in the blood hyperglycaemia, ae f
hypersalivation, excessive secretion of saliva hypersalivatio, ōnis f
hypertension, high arterial blood pressure hypertensio, ōnis f
hypomnesia, a weak or defective state of the memory hypomnesia, ae f
hypophrenia, feebleness of mind hypophrenia, ae f
hypoplasia, underdevelopment of a tissue or part hypoplasia, ae f
hyposalivation, a condition in which there is abnormal decrease in the secretion of saliva hyposalivatio, ōnis f
hypothermia, deficiency of body heat hypothermia, ae f

hypothyroidism, a condition caused by underactivity of the thyroid gland hypothyroidismus, i m (=hypothyreōsis, is f)

I

iatrogenic, happening because of the physician's manner or injudicious remarks iatrogēnus, a, um
immunodeficiency immunodeficientia, ae f
impairment of the voice, dysphonia dysphonia, ae f
implant, any piece of tissue used as a graft implantātum, i n
implantation, the introduction of one tissue or structure into another with the aim of improving the function of any part of the body implantatio, ōnis f
an increase in the total number of leucocytes, leucocytosis leucocytōsis, is f
infection infectio, ōnis f
inflammation of the inner mucous membrane of the uterus, endometritis endondometrītis, itīdis f
inflammation of the liver, hepatitis hepatītis, itīdis f
injury laesio, ōnis f
insufficiency insufficientia, ae f
internal internus, a, um
intravenous intravenōsus, a, um

J

joint articulatio, ōnis f

K

keratomycosis, disease of cornea caused by a fungus keratomycōsis, is f

L

latent, existing but not manifest latens, ntis
left sinister, tra, trum
lingual linguālis, e
lip labium, i n
lung pulmo, ōnis m
luxation, dislocation luxatio, ōnis f
lymphangiitis, inflammation of lymphatic vessels lymphangiītis, itīdis f

lymphocytosis, an increase in the number of lymphocytes
lymphocytōsis, is f

M

macrocyte, a red blood cell that is larger than normal macrocytus, i m

malignant, indicative of danger to ill (neoplasm) malignus, a, um

mammogram (= mastogram), result of breast X-ray examination,
mammogramma, ātis n (=mastogramma, ātis n)

masticatory masticatorius, a, um

mastopathy, any diseased condition of the mammary gland mastopathia, ae f

medical specialist treating

~ **blood diseases, haematologist**
haematolōgus, i m

~ **children's diseases, paediatrician (paediatrist)** paediāter, tri m

~ **diseases of inner organs, therapist (therapist)** therapeutista, ae m

~ **ear and larynx diseases,**

otolaryngologist otolaryngolōgus, i m

~ **mental diseases, psychiatrist** psychiāter, tri m

~ **tumorous diseases, oncologist**
oncolōgus, i m

~ **tuberculosis, phthisiologist** phthisiāter, tri m

megalomania, a mental condition in which a person has grandiose delusions about himself and his own intellect, power, importance and so on
megalomania, ae f

melanocarcinoma, a darkly pigmented malignant epithelial tumor
melanocarcinōma, ātis n

metastasis, the transfer of disease from its primary site to distant parts of the body by blood vessels, lymphatics or direct contiguity metastāsis, is f

method of treatment by means of medicinal plants, phytotherapy
phytotherapia, ae f

myopia, short sight myopia, ae f

N

narcosis, stupor produced by drugs and tending to insensibility and paralysis
narcōsis, is f

narrowing or stricture of the duct of the lacrimal gland, dacryostenosis
dacryostenōsis, is f

nasal nasālis, e

nephrogenic, produced by or originating in a kidney nephrogēnus, a, um

nephropathy, disease of the kidney
nephropathia, ae f

neurogenic, happening because of the nervous system neurogēnus, a, um

O

occlusion, the contact between upper and lower teeth on the closure of the jaws or during normal movement of the mandible occlusio, ōnis f

odontogenic, relating to the development of the teeth odontogēnus, a, um

odontome, a solid or cystic tumour occurring in the jaws which is derived from cells conserved in tooth development odontōma, ātis n

oedema, the presence of excessive amounts of fluid in the intercellular tissue spaces of the body oedēma, ātis n

oesophagostenosis, narrowing of the oesophagus oesophagostenōsis, is f
oesophagus oesophāgus, i m

oligodactylia, a congenital deficiency of fingers or toes oligodactylia, ae f

oncologist, medical specialist treating tumorous diseases oncolōgus, i m

oncotherapy, the treatment of tumours
oncotherapia, ae f

open apertus, a, um

operation operatio, ōnis f

the operation of removal of the adenoid growth by excision,
adenotomy adenotomia, ae f

ophthalmoscopy, instrumental-visual examination of the eye
ophthalmoscopia, ae f

**ophthalmoplegia, pulsy (paralysis) of
ocular muscles** ophthalmoplegia, ae f
**the origin and development of morbid
condition, pathogenesis** pathogenēsis,
is f

**the origin, formation and development
of body tissue, histogenesis**
histogenēsis, is f

**osteodystrophy, a disorder of bone
nutrition** osteodystrophia, ae f

osteotomy, dissection of a bone
osteotomia, ae f

otogenic, happening because of the ear
otogēnus, a, um

**otorhinolaryngologist, medical specialist
treating ear, nose and larynx diseases**
otorhinolaryngolōgus, i m

P

**paediatrician (paediatrist), medical
specialist treating children's diseases**
paediāter, tri m

**paralysis, loss of motor strength due to a
functional or organic disorder of
neural or neuromuscular
mechanismus** paralýsis, is f

**paralysis affecting the soft palate,
palatoplegia** palatoplegia, ae f

**paralysis of similar parts on both sides
of the body, diplegia** diplegia, ae f

**paranephritis, an inflammatory
condition involving the connective
tissue adjacent to the kidney**
paranephritīs, itīdis f

**parotitis, an inflammaty state of the
parotid gland** parotītis, itīdis f

partial partiālis, e

**a pathological condition in which one
muscle, one group of muscles or one
part of the body is only affected,
monoplegia** monoplegia, ae f

**pericystitis, inflammation in which the
structures around the urinary
bladder are affected** pericystītis, itīdis f

**a person with an unusually small size of
head, microcephalus** microcephālus,
i m

**pharmacophobia, morbid fear of taking
drugs or medicines** pharmacophobia,
ae f

**pharmacotherapy, the treatment of
disease with drugs** pharmacotherapia,
ae f

**phlebography 1) radiographic
visualization of veins 2) the tracing of
the venous pulse by means of a
phlebograph** phlebographia, ae f

**phoniatics (= phoniatriy), the treatment
of disorders of speech** phoniatria, ae f

**photophobia, abnormal intolerance to
light** photophobia, ae f

**phthisiologist, medical specialist treating
tuberculosis** phthisiāter, tri m

**phytotherapy, method of treatment by
means of medicinal plants**
phytotherapia, ae f

plicated plicātus, a, um

**pneumonia, inflammation of the spongy
tissue of the lung** pneumonia, ae f

**podagra, gout, a disease of the purine
metabolism characterized by attacks
of arthritis with an assotiated raised
serum uric acid** podāgra, ae f

podalgia, sensation of pain in the foot
podalgia, ae f

**polyavitaminosis, a morbid condition
caused by deficiency of several
vitamins** polyavitaminōsis, is f

**polyposis, a condition in which the colon
is studded with polypi growing from
the mucous membrane** polypōsis, is f

postoperative postoperatīvus, a, um

pregnancy gravidītas, ātis f

primary primarius, a, um

**proctoscopy, instrumental-visual
examination of the rectum**
proctoscopia, ae f

**the production of urinary calculi and the
morbid state due to the presence of
calculi in the urinary system,
urolithiasis** urolithiāsis, is f

**profuse discharge of mucous fluid from
the nose, rhinorrhoea** rhinorrhoea, ae f

progressive progressīvus, a, um

prophylaxis, the art of preventing disease prophylaxis, is f
protrusive, removed ahead protrusīvus, a, um
psychiatrist, medical specialist treating mental diseases psychiāter, tri m
psychogenic, developing or originating of mental causes psychogēnus, a, um
psychologist, specialist studying mental activities of a human personality psycholōgus, i m
pulp pulpa, ae f
pyuria, a condition in which pus is present in the urine pyuria, ae f

R

a red blood cell that is larger than normal, macrocyte macrocŷtus, i m
recurrent recurrens, ntis
removal of an entire pathological structure, organ or part, amputation amputatio, ōnis f
resection, surgical removal of a part of an anatomical structure resectio, ōnis f
results of quantitative and qualitative examination of blood, haemogram haemogramma, ātis n
rhinolith, a concretion in the cavity of the nose rhinolīthus, i m
rhinopathy, any morbid condition of the nose rhinopathia, ae f
rhinoscopy, instrumental-visual examination of the nose rhinoscopia, ae f
rupture, the breaking or forcible disruption of continuity of the bone or an other structure ruptūra, ae f
right dexter, tra, trum

S

salivary salivarius, a, um
short brevis, e
science studying drugs and their usage, pharmacology pharmacologia, ae f
scientist studying normal vital processes in human organism physiolōgus, i m
secondary secundarius, a, um
senile senīlis, e
septum septum, i n
short brevis, e

sialolith, a salivary calculus sialolīthus, i m
simple simplex, ĭcis
specialist studying forms of life and vital organisms, biologist biolōgus, i m
specialist studying the man in process of his evolution, anthropologist anthropolōgus, i m
spondylopathy, any disease of the vertebrae spondylopathia, ae f
state status, us m
a state in which most of the teeth are lacking, oligodontia oligodontia, ae f
a state in which there are too few erythrocytes, erythropenia erythropenia, ae f
stenosis, narrowing or stricture of an orifice or of the lumen of a hollow or tubular organ stenōsis, is f
stomach gaster, tris f
stomatology, branch of clinical medicine treating diseases of the oral cavity stomatologia, ae f
stomatitis, inflammation of the oral cavity stomatītis, itīdis f
subcutaneous subcutaneous, a, um
a sudden blocking of a blood vessel, usually an artery, by the emboli, thromboembolism thromboēbolismus, i m
superficial superficiālis, e
suppurative, pus-forming suppuratīvus, a, um
symblepharon, adhesion of the eyelid to the eyeball symblephāron, i n
symptom, the consciousness of a disturbance in a bodily function symptōma, ātis n
syndrome, a distinct group of signs which form a characteristic clinical picture of the disease syndrōmum, i n

T

tachyphagia, abnormal quickness in eating, tachyphagia tachyphagia, ae f
therapist (therapist), medical specialist treating diseases of inner organs therapeutista, ae m

thromboembolism, a sudden blocking of a blood vessel, usually an artery, by the emboli thromboëmbolismus, i m
thrombosis, intravascular coagulation during life producing a thrombus thrombōsis, is f
tissue textus, us m
tomography, body-section radiography tomographia, ae f
tongue lingua, ae f
tonsillitis, inflammation of the tonsil tonsillītis, itīdis f
tonsillectomy, surgical excision of a tonsil tonsillectomia, ae f
toxicosis, the pathological condition caused by the absorption of poisons toxicōsis, is f
transfusion, the introduction of sterile fluids such as blood, plasma, serum and other solutions into the blood vessels of the circulatory system transfusio, ōnis f
transplantation, the operation of transference of a tissue or an organ from one place to an other with the aim of improving or renewing the function transplantatio ōnis f
trauma, injury trauma, ātis n
treatment by means of natural or artificial physical factors, physiotherapy physiotherapia, ae f
true verus, a, um
tuberculosis tuberculōsis, is f
tumor (= tumour) tumor, ōris m
typhlocele, a hernia involving the caecum typhlocēle, es f

U

ulcer, a localized necrotic lesion of the skin or a mucous surface ulcus, ěris n
ulceration, the process of formation of an ulcer ulceratio, ōnis f
ultrasonic, ultrasound ultrasonarius, a, um
unfounded or unreasonable fear that there is a predisposition to carcinoma, cancerophobia (= carcinomatophobia) cancerophobia, ae f

V

valve valva, ae f
viral virālis, e

X

xerostomia, dryness of the mouth due to failure of the salivary gland xerostomia, ae f
the X-ray examination of breast, mammography mammographia, ae f
the X-ray examination of the great vessels and the chambers of the heart, angiocardiology angiocardiology, ae f
the X-ray examination of tooth, odontography odontographia, ae f

W

wart, a circumscribed, cutaneous excrescence having a papilliferous surface verrūca, ae f
wound vulnus, ěris n

MEDICAL PROFESSIONAL EXPRESSIONS

1.	Abactus venter	<i>Artificially induced abortion</i>
2.	Abalienatio mentis	<i>Insanity; mental derangement</i>
3.	Ad aurem (ad aur.)	<i>At the ear</i>
4.	Ad libitum (ad lib.)	<i>At pleasure, freely</i>
5.	Ad usum externum (internum)	<i>To be taken externally (internally); for external (internal) use</i>
6.	Alienatio partis	<i>Gangrene</i>
7.	Alternis diēbus (alt. d.)	<i>Every other day</i>
8.	Alternis horis (a. h.)	<i>Every other hour</i>
9.	Ante meridiem (a. m.)	<i>Morning, before noon</i>
10.	Ante mortem	<i>Before death</i>
11.	Ante partum	<i>Before childbirth</i>
112.	Ante prandium (a. p.)	<i>Before dinner</i>
113.	Auris dextra (a. d.)	<i>Right ear</i>
114.	Auris laevis (sinistra) (a. l., a. s.)	<i>Left ear</i>
115.	Aures utrae	<i>Both ears</i>
16.	Bipāra	<i>A woman who has had born two children at separate births</i>
17.	Bis in die (b. i. d.)	<i>Twice a day</i>
18.	Compos mentis	<i>Of sound mind</i>
19.	Dolōres vagi	<i>Wandering pains</i>
20.	Facies hippocratica	<i>The appearance of a dying person described by Hippocrates: a pale or livid face with dull sunken eyes, pinched nose, hollow cheeks and temples, openmouth and dropped lower jaw</i>
21.	Habitus aegrōti	<i>The general physical appearance of a diseased person; habit</i>
22.	Horrīda cutis (=cutis anserīna)	<i>Goose flesh</i>
23.	Impotentia coēundi	<i>Sexual impotence in the male</i>
24.	Impotentia erigendi	<i>Sexual impotence due to lack of the power of erection of the penis</i>
25.	Impotentia generandi	<i>Inability to reproduce</i>
26.	In articūlo mortis	<i>At the instant of death</i>
27.	In extrēmīs	<i>At the point of death</i>
28.	In situ	<i>1. In the normal, natural or original position 2. In a given place</i>
29.	Inter alia	<i>Among the other</i>
30.	In utēro	<i>Within the uterus</i>
31.	In vacuo	<i>In a vacuum</i>
32.	In vitro	<i>Within a glass vessel; applied to changes taking</i>

		<i>place in the test — tube method of investigation</i>
33.	In vivo	<i>Within the living organism</i>
34.	Intra vitam	<i>During life</i>
35.	Locum tenens	<i>A medical practitioner who acts as deputy for another</i>
36.	Locus minōris resistentiae	<i>The place of least resistance (an organ or tissue most likely to be a particular disease)</i>
37.	Lusus natūrae	<i>A teratism or other freak of nature</i>
38.	Malum aegyptīcum	<i>Diphtheria (literally — Egyptian evil)</i>
39.	Malum arteriārum senīle	<i>Senile arteriosclerosis (literally — senile evil of arteries)</i>
40.	Malum cadūcum	<i>Epilepsy (literally — falling evil)</i>
41.	Malum venereum	<i>Syphilis (literally — venereal evil)</i>
42.	Minīmum audibīle	<i>The auditory threshold; the least sound that can be heard</i>
43.	Minīmum cognoscibīle	<i>The visibility threshold for recognizing shapes</i>
44.	Minīmum sensibīle	<i>The threshold of consciousness</i>
45.	Muscae volitantes	<i>The appearance in the fields of vision of variously shaped figures caused by defect of the vitreous humor (literally — flying flies)</i>
46.	Noli - me - tangēre	<i>An old but colorful name for rodent ulcer (literally — do not touch me)</i>
47.	Non compos mentis	<i>A person who is not sufficiently sound of mind to manage his own affairs</i>
48.	Nostrum	<i>A quack remedy or a medicine the ingredients of which are kept secret</i>
49.	Nullipāra	<i>A woman who has not given birth to a child</i>
50.	Ocūlus dexter (OD, o. d.)	<i>Right eye</i>
51.	Omnībus alternis horis (o. alt. hor.)	<i>Every other hour</i>
52.	Omni mane (o. m.)	<i>Every morning</i>
53.	Omni nocte (o. n.)	<i>Every night</i>
54.	Per rectum (p. r.)	<i>Per rectum (through the rectum)</i>
55.	Post meridiem (p. m.)	<i>Evening or afternoon</i>
56.	Post mortem	<i>After death</i>
57.	Post partum	<i>After childbirth</i>
58.	Post prandium	<i>After dinner</i>
59.	Potentia coēundi	<i>The capacity to have sexual intercourse</i>
60.	Potentia concipiendi	<i>The capacity to conceive</i>
61.	Potentia generandi	<i>The power to beget children</i>
62.	Primigravīda	<i>One who is pregnant for the first time</i>
63.	Primipāra	<i>A woman who has had one child</i>
64.	Prognōsis anceps	<i>An uncertain prognosis</i>
65.	Prognōsis fausta	<i>A good prognosis</i>

66.	Prognōsis infausta	<i>An unfavorable prognosis</i>
67.	Prognōsis quoad vitam	<i>An opinion as to whether the patient will live</i>
68.	Pro ratiōne aetātis (p. r. aet.)	<i>According to age</i>
69.	Pro re nata (p. r. n.)	<i>Occasionally, when required</i>
70.	Pubertas plena	<i>The attainment of full sexual maturity</i>
71.	Pubertas praecox	<i>Puberty occurring at an abnormally early age</i>
72.	Quantum libet (=quantum placet)	<i>As much as you please</i>
73.	Quaqua hora (q. q. h.)	<i>Every hour</i>
74.	Quater in die (q. i. d.)	<i>Four times a day</i>
75.	Secundigravida	<i>A woman who is pregnant for the second time</i>
76.	Secundipara	<i>A woman who has had two children, in two different pregnancies</i>
77.	Status asthmaticus	<i>A severe and continuous attack of asthma in which there is marked dispnoea and finally exhaustion and collaps</i>
78.	Status convulsivus sive epilepticus	<i>Repeated and prolonged epileptic seizures without recovery of consciousness between attacks</i>
79.	Status praesens	<i>The present condition</i>
80.	Ter de die (t. d. d.)	<i>Thrice a day</i>
81.	Unipara	<i>A woman who has given birth once only</i>
82.	Vis conservatrix	<i>The innate strength of an organism enabling it to withstand disease</i>
83.	Vis medicatrix naturae	<i>The natural ability of the organism to prevail over disease without external assistance</i>
84.	Vis vitae (vitālis)	<i>The life force</i>

LATIN PROVERBS AND QUOTATIONS

1.	Aes debitōrem leve, grave inimīcum facit	<i>If you want to keep a friend, never borrow, never lend</i>
2.	Amīcus certus in re incerta cernitur	<i>A friend in need is a friend indeed</i>
3.	Amor non est medicabilis herbis	<i>No herb will cure love</i>
4.	Amor tussisque non celantur	<i>Love and cough cannot be hidden</i>
5.	Aquīla muscas non captat	<i>An eagle doesn't catch the flies</i>
6.	Arte et humanitāte, labōre et scientia	<i>By art and humanity, by labor and knowledge</i>
7.	Audiātur et altēra pars	<i>Let's hear the opposite side!</i>
8.	Aurōra Musis amīca	<i>He that will thrive, must rise at five</i>
9.	Bis dat qui cito dat	<i>He gives twice who gives in a trice</i>
10.	Bona valetūdo melior est quam maxīmae divitiae	<i>Good health is above wealth</i>
11.	Cogitatiōnes posteriōres saepe sunt meliōres	<i>Second thoughts are the best</i>
12.	Cogito ergo sum	<i>I think, therefore I am</i>
13.	Consuetūdo est altēra natūra	<i>Custom is second nature</i>
14.	Copia non est inopia	<i>Store is no sore</i>
15.	Cum promisēras, facias	<i>Promise is a debt</i>
16.	De gustibus non est disputandum	<i>Tastes are not to be argued</i>
17.	De mortuis aut bene aut nihil	<i>Speak nothing but good of the dead</i>
18.	Diabōlus non est tam ater, ac pingitur	<i>The devil is not so black as he is painted</i>
19.	Dictum — factum	<i>Said and done</i>
20.	Dies levat lucrum	<i>Time heals most sorrows</i>
21.	Divide et impēra	<i>Divide and rule</i>
22.	Domus propria domus optīma	<i>My house is my castle (East or west, home is best)</i>
23.	Dum spiro spero	<i>As long as I breathe, I hope</i>
24.	Duos qui lepōres sequitur, neutrum capit	<i>If you run after two hares, you will catch neither</i>
25.	Dura lex sed lex	<i>The law is the law and must be obeyed</i>
26.	Experientia est optīma magistra (=Usus est optīmus magister)	<i>Experience is the best teacher</i>
27.	Ebrietas est voluntaria insania	<i>Drunkenness is nothing but voluntary madness</i>
28.	E cantu dignoscitur avis	<i>A bird may be known by its song</i>
29.	Equi donāti dentes non sunt inspiciendi	<i>Don't look a gift horse in the mouth</i>
30.	Errāre humānum est	<i>It's human to err</i>
31.	Est avis in dextra melior quam quattuor extra	<i>A bird in the hand is worth one hundred in flight</i>

32.	Facile dictu, difficile factu	<i>Easier said than done</i>
33.	Facta, non verba	<i>Better to do well than to say well</i>
34.	Festina lente	<i>Make haste slowly</i>
35.	Finis coronat opus	<i>All is well that ends well</i>
36.	Fronti nulla fides	<i>Appearances are deceitful</i>
37.	Fortes fortuna adiuvat	<i>Fortune favours the brave</i>
38.	Homines amplius oculis credunt quam auribus	<i>A picture is worth a thousand words</i>
39.	Homo a se ortus	<i>A self - made man</i>
40.	Homo doctus in se divitias habet	<i>The wealth of the mind is the only true wealth</i>
41.	Homo est animal sociale	<i>Man is by nature a political animal</i>
42.	Homo homini lupus est	<i>Man is a wolf to man</i>
43.	Homo proponit, sed Deus disponit	<i>Man proposes but God disposes</i>
44.	Homo sum, humani nihil a me alienum esse puto	<i>I am a man, I count nothing human alien to me</i>
45.	Ignorantia non est argumentum	<i>Lack of knowledge is no excuse (= Ignorance is no argument)</i>
46.	In medio stat virtus	<i>Virtue stands in the middle</i>
47.	Ira furor brevis est	<i>Anger is short madness</i>
48.	Labor et patientia omnia vincunt	<i>Diligence is the mother of success</i>
49.	Mala herba cito crescit	<i>Great weeds grow apace</i>
50.	Manus manum lavat	<i>One hand washes the other</i>
51.	Mare verborum, gutta rerum	<i>Great boast, small roast</i>
52.	Medicus curat, natura sanat	<i>The physician heals, nature convalesces</i>
53.	Mens sana in corpore sano	<i>A healthy mind in a healthy body</i>
54.	Nemo sine vitio est	<i>No one is without a fault</i>
55.	Ne differas in crastinum	<i>Never put off till tomorrow what you can do today</i>
56.	Ne noceas, si juvare non potes	<i>Do no harm, if you can not help</i>
57.	Nomen est omen	<i>The name is the sign</i>
58.	Ne Iuppiter quidem omnibus placet	<i>He who pleased everybody died before he was born</i>
59.	Nihil volenti difficile est	<i>Anything is possible if you wish hard enough</i>
60.	Non est fumus absque igne	<i>There is no smoke without fire</i>
61.	Non est via in medicina sine lingua Latina	<i>There is no way in medicine without Latin</i>
62.	Non scholae, sed vitae discimus	<i>We learn not for school but for life</i>
63.	Nulla aetas ad discendum sera	<i>It is never too late to learn</i>
64.	Nulla regula sine exceptione	<i>There is no rule without exception</i>
65.	Nulla dies sine linea	<i>Not a day without a line</i>
66.	Nullum malum sine aliquo bono	<i>No great loss without some small gain</i>
67.	Omnia fluunt, omnia mutantur	<i>Everything flows and everything changes</i>
68.	Omnia mea mecum porto	<i>All I have, I carry with me</i>

69.	O tempōra, o mores!	<i>What times! What customs!</i>
70.	Otium post negotium	<i>Work done, have your fun</i>
71.	Pacta sunt servanda	<i>Agreements should be obeyed</i>
72.	Paulātim summa petuntur	<i>Learn to creep before you leap</i>
73.	Per aspēra ad astra	<i>Through the thorns (hard-ships) to the stars!</i>
74.	Pigritia est mater vitiōrum	<i>Idleness is the mother of all evil</i>
75.	Plenus venter non studet libenter	<i>A full stomach is deaf to learning</i>
76.	Potius sero quam nunquam	<i>Better is late than never</i>
77.	Primum noli nocēre	<i>First, do no harm</i>
78.	Principium dimidium totius	<i>Well begun is half done</i>
79.	Procul ex oculis — procul ex mente	<i>Out of sight, out of mind</i>
80.	Quem Deus perdere vult, dementat prius	<i>Whom God wishes to ruin, he first deprives him of reason</i>
81.	Quidquid latet apparēbit	<i>What is done by night appears by day</i>
82.	Quidquid Latīne dictum sit, altum vidētur	<i>Anything said in Latin sounds profound</i>
83.	Qui non est nobiscum adversus nos est	<i>He that is not with us is against us</i>
84.	Qui quaerit, repērit	<i>He will find who is searching</i>
85.	Qui scribit, bis legit	<i>He who writes reads twice</i>
86.	Qui seminat mala, metet mala	<i>The ill you do will rebound upon you</i>
87.	Qui tacet consentire vidētur	<i>Silence gives consent</i>
88.	Quod erat demonstrandum	<i>Which was to be proved</i>
89.	Quod licet Jovi, non licet bovi	<i>What Jupiter is allowed to do cattle are not</i>
90.	Quot capīta, tot sententiae	<i>So many men, so many minds</i>
91.	Radīces litterārum amārae, fructus dulces	<i>Whatever is good to know is difficult to learn</i>
92.	Repetitio est mater studiōrum	<i>Repeating is the mother of learning</i>
93.	Saltāre ad tibiam alicūjus	<i>To dance after somebody's tune</i>
94.	Scientia potentia est	<i>Knowledge is power</i>
95.	Scio me nihil scire	<i>I know that I know nothing</i>
96.	Sero venientibus ossa	<i>There is nothing left for the late-comers</i>
97.	Sine ira et studio	<i>Without ill-will and without favor</i>
98.	Sine labōre non erit panis in ore	<i>No pains, no gains</i>
99.	Si vis amari, ama!	<i>To be loved, love!</i>
100.	Suae quisque fortunae faber est	<i>Each man is the maker of his own fortune</i>
101.	Sudōre et sanguīne, opera et studio	<i>By blood, toil, tears and sweat</i>
102.	Suis quaeque temporibus	<i>There is a time and place for everything</i>
103.	Suum cuique	<i>To each his own</i>
104.	Tamdiu discendum est, quamdiu discendum vivis	<i>Live and learn</i>
105.	Tantum possumus, quantum scimus	<i>We can do as much as we know</i>
106.	Temperantia est custos vitae	<i>Excesses destroy our powers</i>

107.	Tempōra mutantur et nos mutāmur in illis	<i>The times change and we are changing with them</i>
108.	Tempōris filia veritas	<i>Truth is a daughter of time</i>
109.	Totus mundus agit histriōnem	<i>All the world's a stage</i>
110.	Ubi concordia ibi victoria	<i>Where is the unity, there is the victory</i>
111.	Umbram suam timēre	<i>He is afraid of his own shadow</i>
112.	Una hirundo non facit ver	<i>One swallow makes no summer</i>
113.	Ut salūtas, ita salutabēris	<i>As the call, so the echo</i>
114.	Verba docent, exempla trahunt	<i>Words are teaching, examples are pulling</i>
115.	Verum amīcum pecunia non parābis	<i>Money cannot buy friendship</i>
116.	Vincuntur molli pectōra dura prece	<i>A word warmly said gives comfort even to a cat</i>
117.	Vox popūli — vox Dei	<i>The voice of the people is the God's voice</i>

THE INTERNATIONAL STUDENTS' ANTHEM «GAUDEAMUS»

Gaudeāmus igitur,	Let us rejoice therefore
Juvēnes dum sumus!	While we are young!
Post jucundam juventūtem,	After a pleasant youth,
Post molestam senectūtem	After a troubling old age
Nos habēbit humus. (bis)	The earth will have us.
Ubi sunt qui ante nos	Where are they who before us
In mundo fuēre?	Were in the world?
Transeas ad supēros,	You may go up to the gods,
Transeas ad infēros,	You may cross into the underworld,
Hos si vis vidēre. (bis)	If you wish to see them.
Vita nostra brevis est,	Our life is brief,
Brevi finiētur:	It will shortly end:
Venit mors velocīter,	Death comes quickly,
Rapit nos atrocīter,	Snatches us cruelly,
Nemīni parcētur. (bis)	It spares no one.
Vivat Academia!	Long live the academy!
Vivant professōres!	Long live the teachers!
Vivat membrum quodlibet,	Long live each student!
Vivant membra quaelibet,	Long live all students!
Semper sint in fllore! (bis)	May they always flourish!
Vivant omnes virgīnes,	Long live all girls,
Gracīles, formōsae!	Slender and beautiful!
Vivant et muliēres,	Long live wives as well,
Tenēre, amabīles,	Tender, loveable,
Bonae, laboriōsae. (bis)	Good and productive.
Vivat et Respublica	Long live the state as well
Et qui illam regunt!	As they who rule it!
Vivat nostra civitas,	Long live our city
Maecenatum caritas,	[And] the charity of benefactors
Qui nos hic protēgunt! (bis)	Who protect us here!
Pereat tristitia,	Let sadness perish,
Pereant dolōres!	Let sorrows perish!
Pereat diabōlus,	Let the devil perish,
Quivis antiburschius	Let [perish] whoever who is anti-student
Atque irrisōres !	As well those who mock us !

The most popular stanzas nowadays are typed in black type

LITERATURE

1. *Англо-русский медицинский словарь* : более 90 000 терминов / сост. : И. Ю. Марковина [и др.]. Москва : Медицинское информационное агентство, 2008. 896 с.
2. *Волмянская, О. А.* Англо-русский словарь для специалистов-медиков / О. А. Волмянская. Минск : Асар, 2000. 304 с.
3. *Капитула, Л. С.* Латинский язык = *Lingua Latina* : учеб. / Л. С. Капитула. Минск : БГМУ, 2022. 220 с.
4. *Нечай, М. Н.* Латинский язык и стоматологическая терминология : учеб. пособие для студ. стом. ф-тов вузов / М. Н. Нечай. Тюмень : Печатник, 2010. 256 с.
5. *Русско-англо-латинский словарь крылатых слов и выражений* / сост. А. С. Альбов. Москва : АСТ ; Санкт-Петербург : Сова, 2006. 606 с.
6. *Цисык, А. З.* Латинский язык (*Lingua Latina*) : учеб. / А. З. Цисык. Минск : Новое знание, 2017. 456 с.
7. *Цисык, А. З.* Латинский язык (*Lingua Latina*) : учеб. для студентов по специальности «Стоматология» / А. З. Цисык, Е. Л. Кузнецова. Минск : Новое знание, 2019. 256 с.
8. *Цисык, А. З.* Латинский язык = *The Latin Language* : учеб.-метод. пособие / А. З. Цисык. 4-е изд., испр. Минск : БГМУ, 2022. 200 с.
9. *Arnaudov, G.* *Terminologia medica polyglotta* = Медицинская терминология на пяти языках / G. Arnaudov. София : Медицина и физкультура, 1979. 943 с.
10. *Butterworths Medical Dictionary*. 2-nd ed. London — Boston — Sydney — Wellington — Durban — Toronto : Butterworth, 1979. 1942 p.
11. *Latin and Fundamentals of Medical Terminology* : course of Latin Language for foreign students at educational institutions providing higher medical education / D. Kondratyev [et al.] ; under the general editorship of D. Kondratyev. 2nd ed. Grodno : Grodno State Medical University, 2012. 300 p.
12. *The Latin Language and Medical Terminology Basics* : textbook / L. Yu. Smolska [et al.] ; ed. by L. Yu. Smolska. 3d ed., revised. Kyiv : AUS Medicine Publishing, 2017. 400 p.
13. *Stadman's Medical Dictionary*. 25th ed. Baltimore — Hong Kong — London — Sydney : Williams and Wilkins, 1989. 1751 p.
14. *Terminologia Anatomica* : International Anatomical Terminology. 2nd ed. Stuttgart ; New York : Georg Thieme Verlag, 2011. 292 p.
15. *Terminologia Histologica*. Международные термины по цитологии и гистологии человека с официальным списком русских эквивалентов / под ред. чл.-корр. РАМН В. В. Банина и проф. В. Л. Быкова. Москва : ГЭОТАР-Медиа, 2009. 272 с.

CONTENTS

Preface	3
Introduction into the subject	4
Part I. Phonetic rules of pronunciation	6
Lesson 1. Alphabet in Latin. The pronunciation of vowels, consonants and letter combinations. Accent rules	6
§ 1. Latin alphabet.....	6
§ 2. Division of Latin sounds	7
§ 3. Pronunciation of vowels.....	7
§ 4. Pronunciation of two vowel combinations.....	7
§ 5. Pronunciation of consonants	8
§ 6. Pronunciation of consonant combinations	9
§ 7. Pronunciation of some letter combinations.....	10
§ 8. Stressing rules in the words consisting of two syllables.....	10
§ 9. Stressing rules in the polysyllabic words. Length and brevity of the second end syllable	10
§ 10. Long suffixes.....	11
§ 11. Short suffixes.....	11
§ 12. Suffixes with similar quality of vowel in all parts of medical terminology	11
§ 13. The way of accent determination when the second end vowel isn't a part of a long or a short suffix	12
§ 14. Some rules of syllable length determining.....	12
§ 15. The rules of syllable brevity determining	12
§ 16. Exercises.....	13
Part II. Anatomical terminology	16
Lesson 2. The structure of Latin anatomical terms. Nouns and their grammar categories.....	16
§ 17. The Latin terminology in anatomy and its structure.....	16
§ 18. Grammar categories of noun.....	16
§ 19. Dictionary form of nouns	17
§ 20. Description of declensions	18
§ 21. The stem of the noun and the way to determine it.....	19
§ 22. Exercises.....	19
§ 23. Vocabulary to lesson 2	20
Lesson 3. Adjectives and their dictionary form. Adjective and noun agreement	21
§ 24. Introductory information about adjectives in Latin	21
§ 25. 1 st group of adjectives.....	21
§ 26. 2 nd group of adjectives	22
§ 27. Adjective and noun agreement.....	23
§ 28. The Comparative degree	24
§ 29. Comparative forms in anatomical terminology	25

§ 30. The Superlative degree	26
§ 31. Peculiarities of the use of the comparison degrees of the adjectives magnus, a, um and parvus, a, um in Latin anatomical terminology	26
§ 32. Exercises	27
§ 33. Vocabulary to lesson 3.....	28
Lesson 4. Nominative plural of nouns and adjectives.....	29
§ 34. Nominative plural endings of nouns and adjectives.....	29
§ 35. Abbreviations of Nominative plural forms used in anatomical terms.....	30
§ 36. Exercises	31
§ 37. Vocabulary to lesson 4.....	31
Lesson 5. Genitive plural of nouns and adjectives.....	32
§ 38. Genitive plural endings of nouns and adjectives	32
§ 39. Exercises	34
§ 40. Vocabulary to lesson 5.....	34
Lesson 6. The Accusative singular and plural of the nouns and adjectives. Prepositions used with the Accusative.....	35
§ 41. Accusative singular and plural endings	35
§ 42. Prepositions used with the Accusative	36
§ 43. Prefixes formed from the prepositions used with the Accusative	37
§ 44. Exercises	37
§ 45. Vocabulary to lesson 6.....	38
Lesson 7. Ablative singular and plural of the nouns and adjectives. Prepositions used with the ablative.....	39
§ 46. Ablative and its formation	39
§ 47. Prepositions used with the Ablative	40
§ 48. Prefixes formed from the prepositions used with the Ablative	41
§ 49. Exercises	41
§ 50. Vocabulary to the lesson 7.....	42
§ 51. Summary table of declensions and case endings.....	42
§ 52. Model (sample) of the final test on anatomical terminology	43
Latin-English vocabulary	44
English-Latin vocabulary	49
Part III. Pharmaceutical terminology.....	54
Lesson 8. Introduction to the Latin pharmaceutical terminology.....	54
§ 53. General information on the Latin pharmaceutical terminology	54
§ 54. The drug form names	55
§ 55. Components of medicinal plants	56
§ 56. Medicinal plants in the pharmaceutical terms	56
§ 57. The morphological structure of one-word Latin drug names	57
§ 58. Some rules of building multiword pharmaceutical terms.....	58
§ 59. Exercises	58
§ 60. Vocabulary to lesson 8.....	58

Lesson 9. Latin in the medical prescription. Standard verb forms indicating order and instructions in making up the Latin part of prescription.	
General rules of making up the Latin part of prescription.....	59
§ 61. Current use of Latin in medical prescription	59
§ 62. The Imperative verb forms used in a simple medical prescription.....	60
§ 63. The Conjunctive forms in medical prescription.....	61
§ 64. The structure of a complex medical prescription.....	61
§ 65. Some peculiarities of quantity expression in the medical prescription	62
§ 66. Some important rules for making up the Latin part of medical prescription.....	62
§ 67. Morphological roots of plant origin indicating alkaloids and glycosides with different pharmaceutical effects.....	63
§ 68. Exercises.....	63
§ 69. Vocabulary to lesson 9	64
Lesson 10. The use of the Accusative of some pharmaceutical forms in the first line of a medical prescription.....	65
§ 70. General information on the use of the Accusative of the pharmaceutical forms in a medical prescription.....	65
§ 71. The prescription of tablets in the Accusative case	66
§ 72. The prescription of dragees in the Accusative case	66
§ 73. The prescription of ophthalmic films in the Accusative case	67
§ 74. The prescription of suppositories in the Accusative case	67
§ 75. The prescription of aerosols in the Accusative case	68
§ 76. Morphological roots	68
§ 77. Exercises.....	69
§ 78. Vocabulary to lesson 10	70
Lesson 11. Latin names of chemical elements, acids, oxides, hydroxides, peroxides	71
§ 79. Latin names of chemical elements	71
§ 80. Latin names of acids.....	72
§ 81. Latin names of oxides, hydroxides, peroxides.....	73
§ 82. Morphological roots reflecting chemical information	73
§ 83. Exercises.....	74
§ 84. Vocabulary to lesson 11	75
Lesson 12. Latin names of salts in the labels of drug names and in medical prescriptions	76
§ 85. Latin names of salts, whose anions contain oxygen	76
§ 86. Latin names of salts whose anions don't contain oxygen.....	77
§ 87. Anion names of basic salts.....	77
§ 88. Two-component names of potassium and sodium salts.....	78
§ 89. Morphological roots reflecting pharmaceutical information	78
§ 90. Exercises.....	78
§ 91. Vocabulary to lesson 12	80

§ 92. Model (sample) of the final test on pharmaceutical terminology	82
Latin-English vocabulary	83
English-Latin vocabulary	85
Part IV. Clinical terminology	88
Lesson 13. Introduction to the Latin clinical terminology. One-word terms and their morphological structure. Initial and final morphological elements used for word building. Multiword clinical terms. Names of branches of medicine and medical specialists. Names of medical examinations	88
§ 93. General remarks on the Latin clinical terminology	88
§ 94. The morphological structure of one-word clinical terms	88
§ 95. Some notes on the word stressing in clinical names	90
§ 96. Initial and final root elements	90
§ 97. The structure and vocabulary of multiword clinical terms.....	91
§ 98. The names of the common branches of clinical medicine	91
§ 99. The names of medical specialists	92
§ 100. Some notes on the names of medical specialists in Latin and English	93
§ 101. The names of medical examinations and methods of treatment.....	93
§ 102. Table of initial root elements	93
§ 103. Table of final root elements	94
§ 104. Exercises	94
§ 105. Vocabulary to lesson 13.....	95
Lesson 14. One-word names of function disorders, pathological processes and abnormal conditions	98
§ 106. Composition of one-word names of functional disorders	98
§ 107. Composition of one-word names of pathological processes and abnormal conditions	99
§ 108. Table of initial root elements	101
§ 109. Table of final root elements.....	101
§ 110. Exercises	102
§ 111. Vocabulary to lesson 14.....	103
Lesson 15. Names of qualitative and quantitative abnormalities in morphological structures and physiological processes	106
§ 112. Increase and decrease in different quantitative conditions.....	106
§ 113. Increase or decrease in dimension of anatomical and histological structures	107
§ 114. Increase and decrease in the quantity of anatomical and histological structures	107
§ 115. Table of initial root elements	108
§ 116. Table of final root elements	109
§ 117. Exercises	109
§ 118. Vocabulary to lesson 15.....	110

Lesson 16. Names of inflammatory processes which occur in organs and tissues.	
One-word names of endogenous pathological changes and malformations	113
§ 119. Names of inflammatory conditions.....	113
§ 120. Names of pathological cavities	114
§ 121. Names of tumors	115
§ 122. Names of concretions	116
§ 123. Table of initial root elements	116
§ 124. Table of final root elements	117
§ 125. Exercises.....	117
§ 126. Vocabulary to lesson 16.....	118
§ 127. Model (Sample) of the final test on clinical terminology	121
Latin-English vocabulary	122
English-Latin vocabulary	129
Medical professional expressions	137
Latin proverbs and quotations	140
The international students' anthem «Gaudeamus»	144
Literature	145

Учебное издание

Цисык Андрей Зиновьевич
Кузнецова Елена Леонидовна

ЛАТИНСКИЙ ЯЗЫК
THE LATIN LANGUAGE

Учебно-методическое пособие

На английском языке

Ответственная за выпуск Н. А. Круглик
Переводчик А. З. Цисык
Компьютерный набор О. М. Новиковой
Компьютерная вёрстка А. В. Янушкевич

Подписано в печать 05.12.23. Формат 60×84/16. Бумага «Снегурочка».

Ризография. Гарнитура «Times».

Усл. печ. л. 8,83. Уч.-изд. л. 7,83. Тираж 99 экз. Заказ 664.

Издатель и полиграфическое исполнение: учреждение образования
«Белорусский государственный медицинский университет».

Свидетельство о государственной регистрации издателя, изготовителя,
распространителя печатных изданий № 1/187 от 24.11.2023.

Ул. Ленинградская, 6, 220006, Минск.

